

SENIOR LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION

SENIOR
LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION

DENOON & BAXTER



OLIVER & BOYD
LONDON · EDINBURGH

Name Ormond D. Miller

Subject Latin

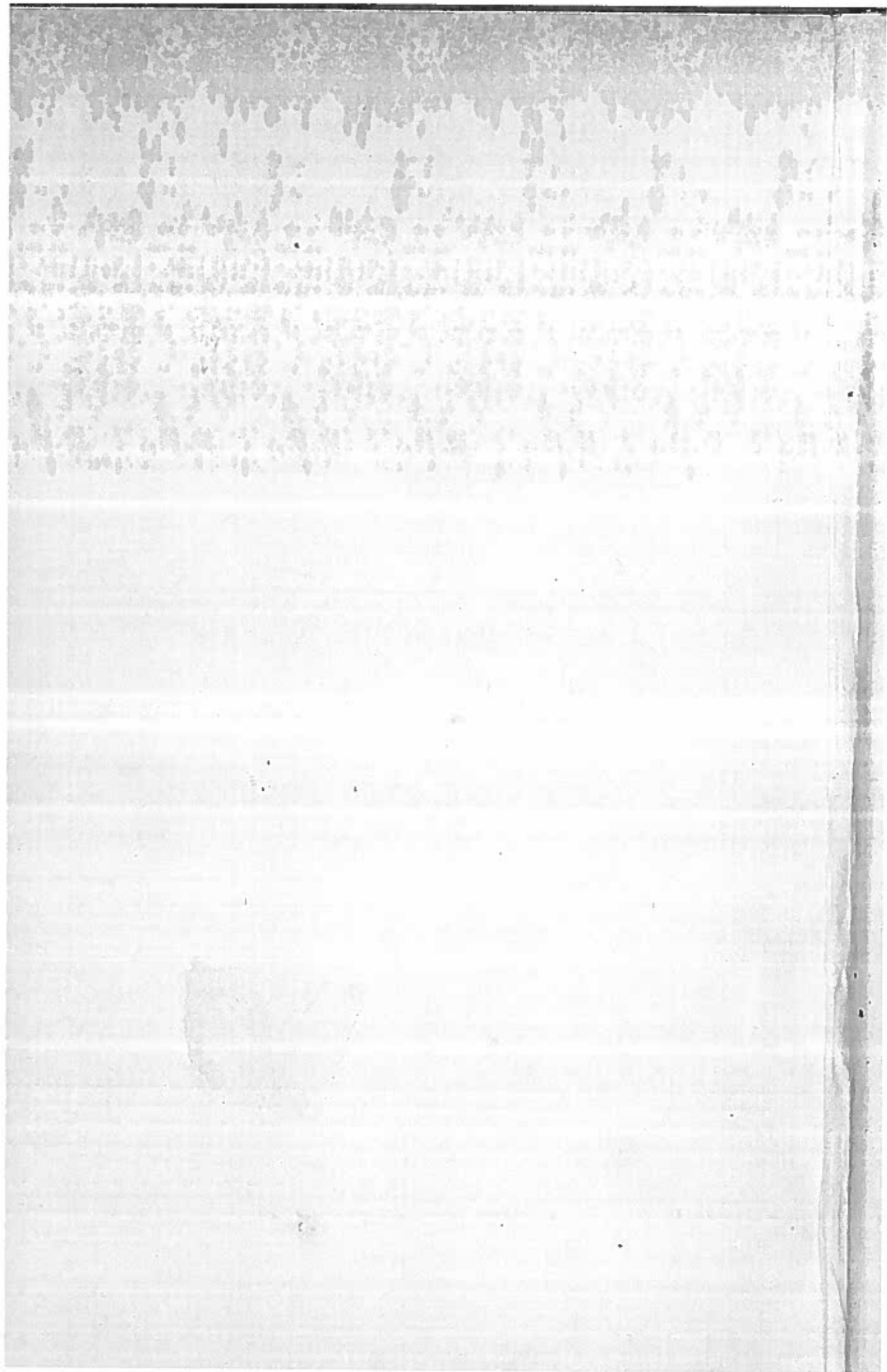
Form IA

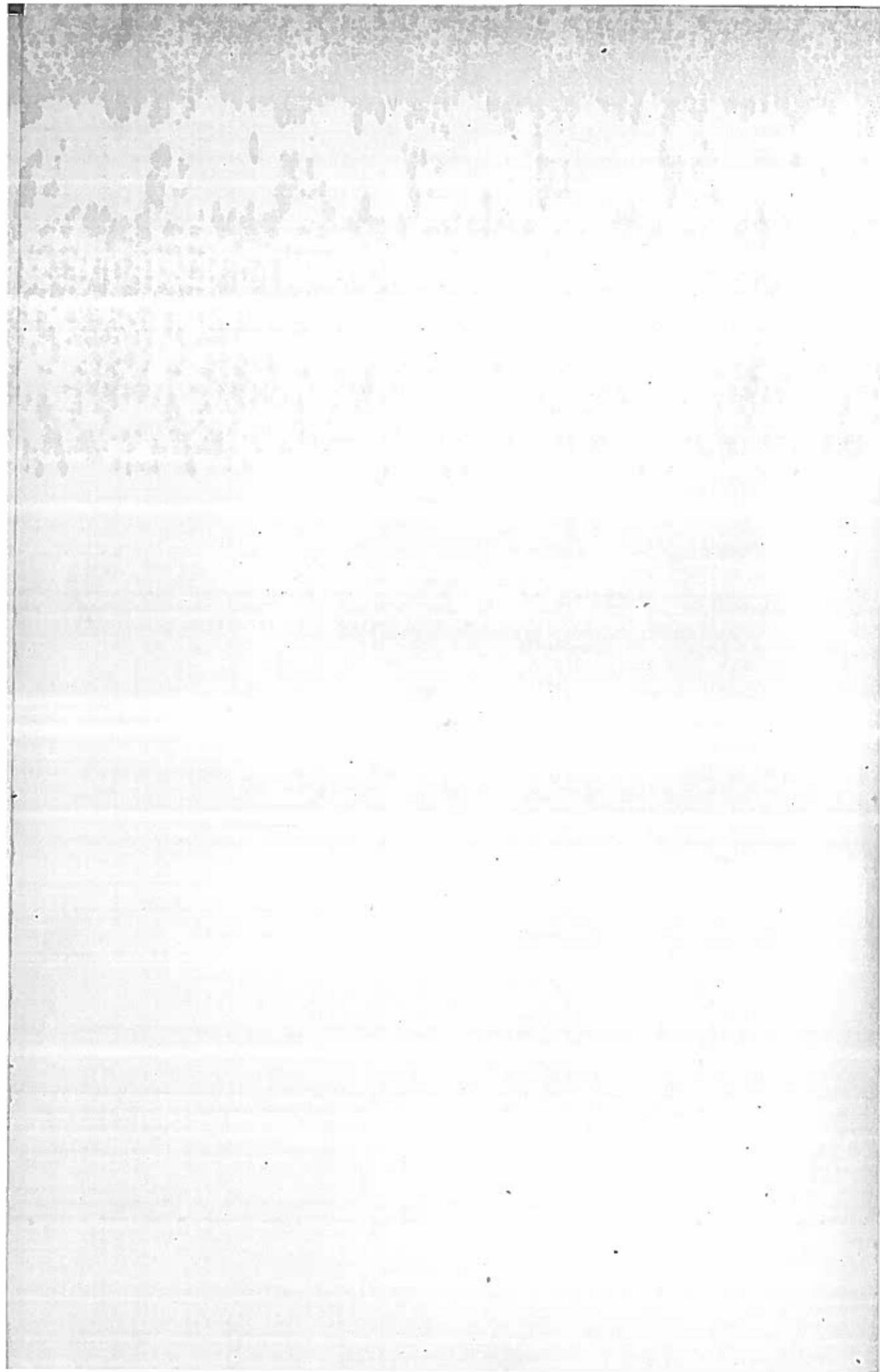
H. & B. Ltd.

Oxford.

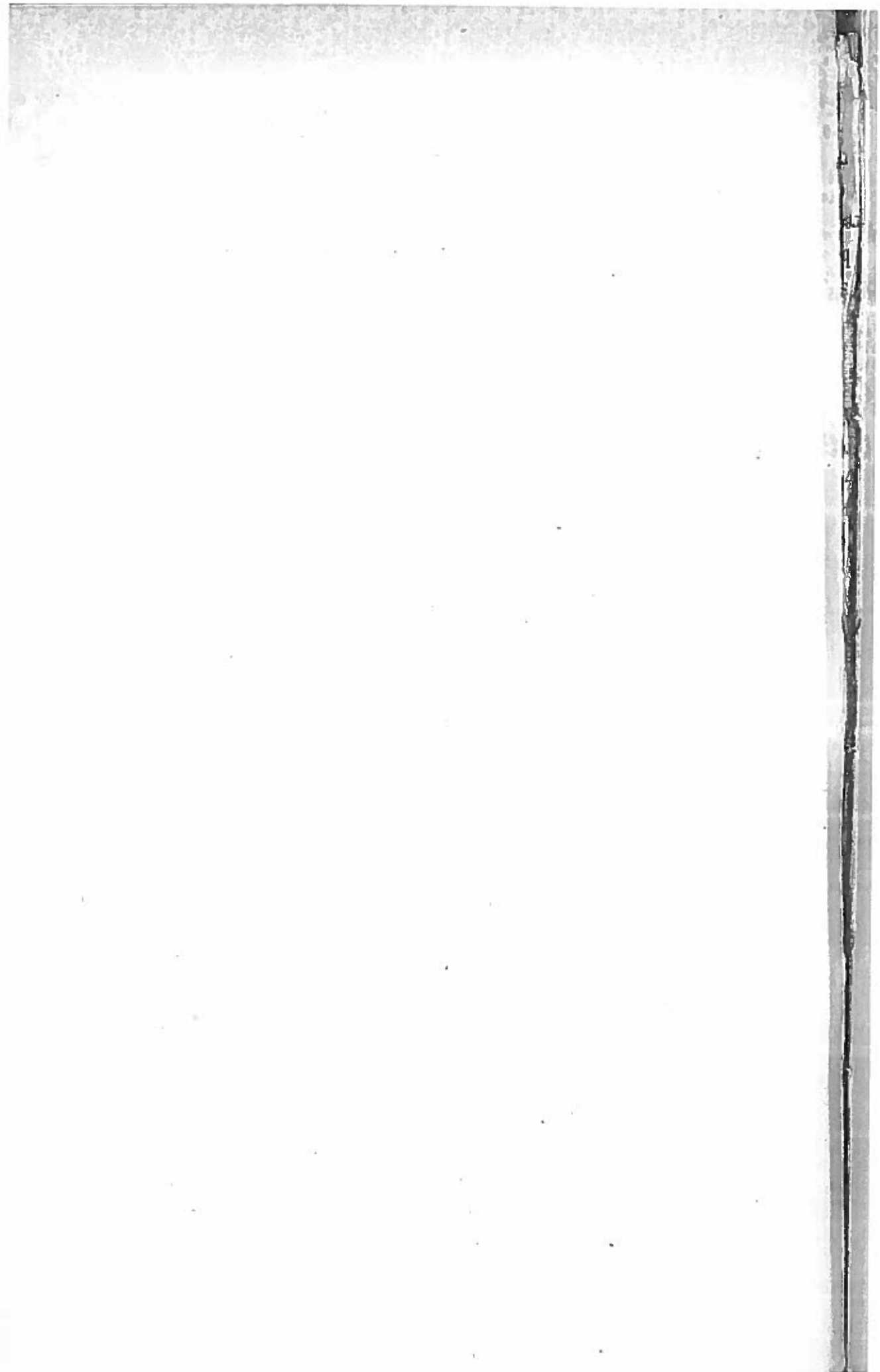
~~Angel Gorington~~
~~XXXXXX~~

~~Michael Maclean~~
Michael Maclean
Maryrose W. Miller





SENIOR LATIN PROSE
COMPOSITION



SENIOR LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION

BY

ERNEST I. DENOON, M.A.

SENIOR CLASSICAL MASTER, DANIEL STEWART'S
COLLEGE, EDINBURGH

AND

WILLIAM A. BAXTER, M.A., B.A.

ASSISTANT CLASSICAL MASTER, DANIEL STEWART'S COLLEGE,
EDINBURGH; FORMERLY SCHOLAR OF GONVILLE AND
CAIUS COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE



OLIVER AND BOYD
EDINBURGH: TWEEDDALE COURT
LONDON: 33 PATERNOSTER ROW, E.C.

PRINTED IN GREAT BRITAIN BY
OLIVER AND BOYD LTD., EDINBURGH

PREFACE

As this book is a continuation of the Authors' *Junior Latin Prose Composition*, a certain amount of elementary knowledge is taken for granted, viz., the Declensions, Comparison of Adjectives and Adverbs, the four regular Conjugations, the common Irregular Verbs, Pronouns, Numerals, and the rules for Time, Place, and Space.

The order in which the Syntax is explained has been dictated by long practical experience, and it is hoped that nothing has been omitted which is vital to the progress of a pupil in Latin Composition during his school career. While each Section contains (in most cases) at least two exercises for practice, numerous Revision exercises, to which the Authors attach great importance, have been inserted at convenient intervals. The passages for continuous prose have been constructed not merely to illustrate the rules immediately preceding, but to include any point which has been previously explained.

The Vocabulary has been made as varied as possible, and, while the stock military phraseology has not been neglected, it has not been made unduly prominent. Long vowels have been marked throughout: short vowels are only marked where experience has shown that mistakes are common.

The Authors are again indebted to the following

scholars who have carefully considered the proof-sheets and contributed helpful suggestions for the improvement of the book :—

Mr A. H. Ashcroft, Fettes College, Edinburgh.

Dr W. King Gillies, Royal High School, Edinburgh.

Dr G. Middleton, late of Aberdeen Grammar School.

Dr C. H. Milne, Daniel Stewart's College, Edinburgh.

Mr F. P. Shepherd, High School, Kelso.

Professor A. Souter, University of Aberdeen.

The Authors will be glad to receive any helpful criticism or suggested emendation.

E. I. D.

W. A. B.

CONTENTS

	PAGE
Introduction : Order of Words in a Simple Sentence— Adjectives and Pronouns—Prepositions—Adverbs— Negatives—Vocative Case—Deviation from the Normal Order—Commoner Co-ordinating Connectives—Order of Clauses—Prose Hints	1
Section I. Tenses Exercises I.-II.	9
Section II. Direct Commands . . . Exercises III.-IV.	11
Section III. Direct Commands (<i>contd.</i>) Exercises V.-VI.	12
Section IV. Indirect Commands. (Sequence of Tenses). Exercises VII.-IX.	14
Section V. Infinitive as Complement Exercises X.-XII.	17
Section VI. Negative Conjunctions. Exercises XIII.-XIV.	19
Revision Exercises XV.-XVII.	21
Section VII. Indirect Statement (I) Exercises XVIII.-XX.	22
Section VIII. Indirect Statement (II) Exercises XXI.-XXIII.	25
Section IX. Indirect Statement (III) Exercises XXIV.-XXVI.	27
Continuous Proses Exercises XXVII.-XXVIII.	30
Section X. Indirect Statement (IV) Exercises XXIX.-XXX.	31
Section XI. <i>Inquit, Ferunt</i> , etc. Exercises XXXI.-XXXII.	33
Section XII. <i>Dīcor, Trādor, Videor</i> , etc. Exercises XXXIII.-XXXIV.	34
Section XIII. Verbs with different Constructions Exercises XXXV.-XXXVI.	36
Revision Exercises XXXVII.-XL.	37
Continuous Proses . . . Exercises XLI.-XLII.	39

	PAGE
Section XIV. Direct Questions (I)	
Exercises XLIII.-XLIV.	40
Section XV. Direct Questions (II)	
Exercises XLV.-XLVI.	42
Section XVI. Direct Questions (III)	
Exercises XLVII.-XLVIII.	43
Section XVII. Indirect Questions (I)	
Exercises XLIX.-L.	44
Section XVIII. Indirect Questions (II)	
Exercises LI.-LII.	46
Section XIX. Indirect Questions (III)	
Exercises LIII.-LIV.	48
Continuous Proses . . .	Exercises LV.-LVI. 50
Section XX. Participles (I) .	Exercises LVII.-LIX. 51
Section XXI. Participles (II) .	Exercises LX.-LXI. 54
Section XXII. Participles (III)	Exercises LXII.-LXIII. 56
Section XXIII. Participles (IV)	Exercises LXIV.-LXV. 58
Section XXIV. Participles (V)	Exercises LXVI.-LXVII. 60
Revision . . .	Exercises LXVIII.-LXXII. 62
Continuous Proses	Exercises LXXIII.-LXXIV. 64
Section XXV. Final or Purpose Clauses (I)	
Exercises LXXV.-LXXVI.	65
Section XXVI. Final Clauses (II)	
Exercises LXXVII.-LXXVIII.	67
Continuous Proses .	Exercises LXXIX.-LXXX. 69
Section XXVII. Consecutive Clauses (I)	
Exercises LXXXI.-LXXXII.	70
Section XXVIII. Consecutive Clauses (II)	
Exercises LXXXIII.-LXXXIV.	72
Continuous Proses	Exercises LXXXV.-LXXXVI. 73
Section XXIX. Consecutive Clauses (III). " <i>Quī</i> " Consecutive	
Exercises LXXXVII.-LXXXVIII.	74
Section XXX. " <i>Quī</i> " Consecutive (<i>contd.</i>)	
Exercises LXXXIX.-XC.	76
Revision . . .	Exercises XCI.-XCV. 77
Continuous Proses .	Exercises XCVI.-XCVII. 80

CONTENTS

ix

	PAGE
Section XXXI. Verbs of Fearing	
Exercises XCVIII.-XCIX.	81
Section XXXII. Verbs governing the Dative Case	
Exercises C.-CI.	83
Section XXXIII. Verbs governing the Dative Case (<i>contd.</i>)	
Exercises CII.-CIII.	85
Continuous Proses . . . Exercises CIV.-CV.	86
Section XXXIV. Gerund . . . Exercises CVI.-CVII.	87
Section XXXV. Gerundive . . . Exercises CVIII.-CIX.	90
Section XXXVI. Gerundive expressing Obligation	
Exercises CX.-CXII.	92
Revision . . . Exercises CXIII.-CXVII.	94
Continuous Proses . . . Exercises CXVIII.-CXIX.	97
Section XXXVII. Conditional Sentences.	
Exercises CXX.-CXXI.	98
Section XXXVIII. Conditional Clauses (<i>contd.</i>)	
Exercises CXXII.-CXXIII.	99
Section XXXIX. "Whether . . . or"	
Exercises CXXIV.-CXXV.	101
Continuous Proses . . . Exercises CXXVI.-CXXIX.	103
Section XL. Impersonal Verbs	
Exercises CXXX.-CXXXI.	105
Section XLI. Impersonal Verbs (<i>contd.</i>)	
Exercises CXXXII.-CXXXIII.	108
Revision . . . Exercises CXXXIV.-CXLIII.	110
Continuous Proses . . . Exercises CXLIV.-CXLVII.	115
Section XLII. Verbs governing the Genitive Case	
Exercises CXLVIII.-CXLIX.	118
Section XLIII. Verbs governing the Ablative Case	
Exercises CL.-CLI.	119
Section XLIV. Price and Value . . . Exercises CLII.-CLIII.	122
Revision . . . Exercises CLIV.-CLXI.	124
Continuous Proses . . . Exercises CLXII.-CLXV.	128
Section XLV. Further uses of the Consecutive	
Exercises CLXVI.-CLXVII.	130

CONTENTS

xi

	PAGE
Section LXII. Indefinite Clauses	
Exercises CCXXXIV.-CCXXXV.	184
Section LXIII. Correlatives	
Exercises CCXXXVI.-CCXXXVII.	185
Section LXIV. Indefinite Pronouns	
Exercises CCXXXVIII.-CCXL.	188
Revision	194
Continuous Proses	196
Exercises CCXLVI.-CCXLIX.	
Section LXV. Concessives	198
Exercises CCL.-CCLI.	
Section LXVI. <i>Quipe quī, Praesertim qui, Quī</i> (Causal and Concessive).	201
Exercises CCLII.-CCLIII.	
Section LXVII. Wishes	203
Exercises CCLIV.-CCLV.	
Section LXVIII. Potential Subjunctive	
Exercises CCLVI.-CCLVII.	204
Section LXIX. Conditional Clauses (<i>contd.</i>)	
Exercises CCLVIII.-CCLIX.	206
Revision	209
Continuous Proses	211
Exercises CCLXIV.-CCLXVII.	
Section LXX. Comparative Clauses	
Exercises CCLXVIII.-CCLXIX.	213
Section LXXI. The Supine	216
Exercise CCLXX.	
Section LXXII. Verbs taking more than one Case	
Construction	217
Revision	219
Exercises CCLXXIII.-CCLXXVI.	
Section LXXIII. Subordinate Clauses	
Exercises CCLXXVII.-CCLXXVIII.	222
Section LXXIV. <i>Sē</i> and <i>Suus</i>	
Exercises CCLXXIX.-CCLXXX.	223
Section LXXV. <i>Ōrātiō Oblīqua</i>	
Exercises CCLXXXI.-CCLXXXIV.	226
Section LXXVI. "Would have"	233
Exercise CCLXXXV.	

	PAGE
Section LXXVII. "Would have been"	
Exercise CCLXXXVI.	235
Revision . . . Exercises CCLXXXVII.-CCXC.	236
Continuous Prose Exercises CCXCI.-CCXCIII.	239
Section LXXVIII. The Roman Calendar	
Exercises CCXCIV.-CCXCV.	241
Additional Exercises in Continuous Prose	
Exercises CCXCVI.-CCCXXII.	245
Vocabulary	260
Index	307

SENIOR LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION

INTRODUCTION

1. Order of Words in a Simple Sentence.

The normal arrangement of words in Latin is—

- (1) The **Subject**, with attributes (if any).
- (2) The **Object** (if any), with attributes (if any);
the indirect object usually precedes the direct object.
- (3) The **Verb**, preceded by attributes (if any).

Note.—Parts of the verb “sum,” I am, consisting of one or two syllables, seldom come at the end of a sentence. The verb “sum” placed at the beginning of a sentence is emphatic and means “exist.”

2. Adjectives and Pronouns.

The following usually precede the noun:—

Cardinal numerals; adjectives of quantity and number, *e.g.*, **māgnus**, **multus**, **tōtus**, **tantus**, **omnis**, etc.; **hīc**, **ille**, **ipse**, **iste**, **quis** and **quī** (interrogative adjective).

The following usually follow the noun:—

Possessive adjectives and ordinal numerals (often, however, preceding).

Other adjectives and attributive genitives may come either before or after the noun which they qualify,

but a word or a phrase qualifying a noun *and* its adjective usually comes between them.

E.g. multa hostium tēla—many weapons of the enemy.

eōdem ūsī cōnsiliō — adopting the same plan.

The order is invariable in the following phrases:—

populus Rōmānus—the Roman people.

rēs frūmentāria—provisions.

rēs gestae—(things accomplished) achievements.

rēs pūblica—the State, the constitution, politics.

pontifex māximus—the chief priest.

dī immortalēs—the immortal gods.

iūs cīvile—the law regarding private rights, civil law.

bellum cīvile—civil war.

cōnsul dēsīgnātus—consul designate.

aes aliēnum—money belonging to another, debt.

magister equitum—master of the horse.

senātus cōnsultum—decree of the senate.

tribūnus plēbis—tribune of the people.

plēbi scītum—decree of the people.

optimus quisque—all the best men.

quam ob rem—wherefore.

quā dē causā—for which reason.

māgnā ex parte—to a great extent.

3. Prepositions usually precede the nouns they govern. But *cum*, “with,” is attached to pronouns.

E.g. mēcum—with me; quibuscum—with whom.

causā—for the sake of, follows the noun it governs.

4. **Adverbs usually precede** the word or phrase which they modify, except *paene*, *ferē* and *prope*—nearly.

5. **Negatives immediately precede** the word or words they modify.

6. The **Vocative Case** usually comes after one or two words.

Note.—When pronouns of more than one person are used in the same sentence, the first person pronoun precedes the second and the third, and the second precedes the third, *e.g.* *ego et tū audīvimus*—you and I heard.

7. Deviation from the Normal Order.

The normal order is frequently broken to secure emphasis, *e.g.* by putting the verb first or the subject last, since the beginning and end of a sentence are the emphatic positions. Thus a sentence even of three words may assume three shades of meaning according to the order in Latin.

E.g. **Superbia** Tarquiniōs perdidit—It was pride that ruined the Tarquini.

Tarquiniōs perdidit superbia—It was the Tarquini that pride ruined.

Perdidit Tarquiniōs superbia—Pride *ruined*, was the ruin of, the Tarquini.

(a) Examples of words in emphasis at the beginning of a sentence:—

NOUN.—**Catōnem** vērō quis nostrōrum ōrātōrum legit?—

Cato! is there any of our orators who reads him?

PRONOUN.—**Hōs** dēlectat assentātiō—

These are the people whom flattery pleases.

ADJECTIVE.—**Brevis** ā nātūrā vīta laudāta est—

It is a short life that is praised by nature.

VERB.—**Vigēbat** in illā domō patruus mōs et disciplīna—

There held sway in that house the rigid customs of our ancestors.

ADVERB.—**Rītē** tē beātum ferunt—

They are justified in speaking of you as happy.

(b) Examples of words in emphasis at the end of a sentence.

NOUN.—Themistoclēs omnium cīvium percēperat **nōmina**—

Themistocles knew all the citizens by name.

ADJECTIVE.—Rēx trīduum iacuit **inclūsus**—

The king lay for three days confined (to his quarters.)

PRONOUN.—Spondeō meliōrem virum esse **nēminem**—

I guarantee that better man there is none.

ADVERB.—Haec ego patior **cottīdiē**—

This is what I put up with every day.

8. The Commoner Co-ordinating Connectives.

These naturally come at or near the beginning of the clause or sentence.

et, and.

et . . . et, both . . . and.

cum . . . tum, both . . . and.

-que, and (always added to the second word, and often found joining two words closely connected).

E.g. Senātus populusque Rōmānus—The Roman Senate and people.

Terrā marique—by land and sea.

ac, and (never before a vowel).

atque, and (and further).

Note.—When more than two words (or phrases) are joined by “and,” they are either all joined by “et” in Latin, or the “et” is omitted altogether.

E.g. Men, women and children—

Virī, mulierēs, liberī

Virī et mulierēs et liberī.

neque (nec), nor, and not } *see* Section VI.
nē . . . quīdem, not even }

quōque, also (after word it emphasises). Māter quōque mortem sibi ipsa cōnscivit—His mother also committed suicide.

etiam, also, even, emphasises. Addēbat etiam ipse nova quaedam volnera—Even he himself added certain new wounds.

Alternative Conjunctions:—

aut . . . aut, either . . . or, denote an **absolute distinction**.

Aut vincere aut mori statuērunt—They resolved either to conquer or die.

vel . . . vel, either . . . or, denote a **slight distinction**.

quārtā vel quīntā hōrā—at the fourth or fifth hour.

-ve, or; or at most (after the second word)—bis terve, twice or thrice at most.

sive (seu) . . . sive (seu), *see* Section XXXIX.

utrum . . . an, *see* Section XIX.

Adversative Conjunctions :—

sed, vērūm, but, denotes opposition and contradiction.

at, but, on the contrary.

autem, but, now (never comes first in a sentence.)

tamen, however, nevertheless.

atquī, but yet.

Causal Conjunctions introducing a reason or explanation :—

nam, for.

enim, for (always placed after the first word).

itaque, and so, therefore.

quā rē
quam ob rem } wherefore.

ergō, therefore.

igitur, therefore, then (usually placed after one or more words.)

Other Common Connectives are :—

primum, first(ly).

deinde, then (secondly).

tum, then.

tandem, at length.

dēnique, at length, finally.

nōn modō (nōn solum) . . .

sed etiam

nōn modō nōn . . . sed nē

. . . quīdem

} see Section VI.

quippe, inasmuch as, see Section LXVI.

N.B.—A very common Latin idiom is to use the connecting relative where English uses "and" with a demonstrative.

E.g. quī=et is (and he).

quod=et id (and that).

quae=et ea (and these things).

Quae cum ita sint, abeamus—

Since *these* things are so } let us go away.
In these circumstances }

9. Order of Clauses in Sentences containing a Principal Clause and one or more Subordinate Clauses :—

- (a) In Latin the chronological or the logical order is normally preserved.
- (b) Relative Clauses usually follow their antecedent. Temporal Clauses, Concessive Clauses, Causal Clauses, Conditional Clauses, and Indirect Questions usually precede the Principal Clause.

E.g. Quae ut sint v̄era, non sunt dīcenda—
Though that may be true, it must not be mentioned.

Dum cīvitās erit, iūdicia fient—Judgments will be made as long as the State exists.

Sī dīves fīam, dem—If I were to become rich, I should give.

- (c) Final and Consecutive Clauses and Indirect Commands follow the Principal Verb.

E.g. Missī sunt quī Apollinem cōsulerent—Men were sent to consult Apollo.

Tantā fuit virtūtē ut vīcerit—His courage has been so great that he has conquered.

Rogō ut legās—I ask you to read.

(d) Other Subordinate Clauses may come either after or before the Principal Clause.

Where special emphasis is desired the normal order is sometimes reversed.

10. Prose Hints.

One of the greatest differences between Latin and English idiom is that Latin prefers to stress the verb where English stresses the noun. English is full of abstract nouns which must be used sparingly in Latin. Latin, where possible, is personal and concrete where English is impersonal and abstract. A few examples will serve to show the main differences.

A.

to give orders—**iubēre, imperāre.**

to show resistance—**resistere.**

to make preparations—**parāre.**

from the foundation of the city—**ab urbe conditā.**

the loss of the money—**pecūnia āmissa.**

in the consulship of Caesar—**Caesare cōsule.**

in my boyhood—**mē puerō.**

cries of indignation—**clāmōrēs indignantium.**

the precepts of philosophy—**praecepta sapientium.**

B. Latin often uses an adjective where English uses an adverb or a noun—

laetus, joyfully; **tūtus, incolumis**, safely; **invītus**, unwillingly; **prūdēns**, knowingly; **tōtus**, the whole of; **summus**, top of, etc.

E.g. **incolumis rediit**—he returned safely.

summus collis—the top of the hill.

tōtus exercitus—the whole of the army.

SECTION I

Tenses

PRESENT TENSE.—In addition to its regular uses the Present Tense is used for past actions which are still going on in the Present, usually with the adverbs **iam**, already, now (in past time); **diū**, for a long time; **iam dūdum**, **iam pridem**, for a long time now.

E.g. Iam dūdum tē vidēre cupiō—I have been desirous of seeing you for a long time now.

IMPERFECT TENSE.—The Imperfect Tense is used for continuous, accustomed, and repeated action in past time, and for actions which had been going on and were still going on at some time in the past.

E.g. Iam dūdum tē vidēre cupiēbam—I had been long desirous of seeing you.

PERFECT TENSE.—The Perfect Tense denotes completed action, *e.g. Vēnī*, I came, I have come. Note the Defective Verbs:—

Meminī, I remember; **Ōdī**, I hate; **Nōvī**, I know (**nōscō**, I am getting to know).

Coepī, I have begun. (The Present, Future and Imperfect Tenses are supplied by **incipiō**, -ēre.)

When coupled to a passive Infinitive the passive forms of **coepī** are used.

E.g. Domus aedificārī coepta est—The house began to be built.

FUTURE and FUTURE PERFECT TENSES.—In Latin great care must be taken with Future tenses, especially in Subordinate Clauses. Attention will be drawn to the use of the Future and Future Perfect in Subordinate

Clauses as they occur. English often uses the Present Tense with a Future meaning. This must be translated almost always by the Future or Future Perfect in Latin, as Latin is in this respect much more accurate than English, *e.g.* I shall see him if he *comes*—*Sī vēnerit*, (he will have come) *eum vidēbō*.

Exercise I

1. I have been living in Rome for three years.
2. The boy, who was sitting on the wall, suddenly fell down.
3. We had been playing on the sea-shore for a long time.
4. The temple began to be built two years ago.
5. He will soon get to know the names of the consuls.
6. I used to be lazy, but I have been diligent for a long time now.
7. Why do you hate your teacher, my son?
8. When will you begin to work hard?
9. The best wine was being sent to the city.
10. Many boys have begun to hate the wars of the Romans.

Exercise II

1. These lazy boys do not remember.
2. Your friend used to be afraid of the smallest animal.
3. The enemy began to attack at dawn.
4. He will always hate the man who hurt the dog.
5. The poor men kept asking for money.
6. I shall have finished the greater part of the task before night.
7. This girl used to walk to school in the morning.
8. We had been waiting-for my wife for a long time.
9. I have long been trying to remember that.
10. The wise dog knew his master's voice.

SECTION II

Direct Commands

A Direct Positive Command or Request is expressed
(a) in the 2nd Person, by the Present Imperative.

E.g. Hōc fac—Do this.

Fortēs este, militēs—Be brave, soldiers.

(b) in the 1st and 3rd Persons, by the Present Subjunctive.

E.g. Hōc faciāmus—Let us do this.

Statim redeant—Let them return at once.

A Direct Negative Command or Prohibition is expressed

(a) in the 2nd Person by nōlī (be unwilling) and the Present Infinitive.

E.g. Nōlī hōc facere, mī fili—Do not do this, my son.

Nōlīte cessāre, puerī—Don't be slack, boys.

(b) in the 1st and 3rd Persons, by nē with the Present Subjunctive.

E.g. Nē hōc faciāmus—Let us not do this.

Nē Rōmam veniant—Let them not come to Rome.

(An alternative construction for nōlī with Infinitive is nē with the Perfect Subjunctive: Nē flūmen trānsieris—Do not cross the river; but this construction is not common in the best prose.)

Exercise III

1. Do not throw stones at the dog, children.
2. Let the judge punish the man who committed that crime.
3. Don't follow me, boys.
4. Let us return home through the town.
5. Tell your pupils a new story sometimes.
6. Let the citizens not remain in the streets at night.
7. Don't hurt the man (when he is) lying on the ground.
8. Lead me to the boy who broke the window.
9. Do not compel us to be slaves, O king.
10. Do this, my son, as quickly as possible.

Exercise IV

1. Do not follow the shameful example of these cowards.
2. Let the woman speak to me.
3. Bring bread and wine for my friends, slave.
4. Let us not remain longer in this city.
5. Lead six hundred horsemen through the valley.
6. Do not give the best prize to the laziest boy.
7. Let us buy a dozen eggs in this shop.
8. Come home at once: do not delay.
9. Let the vanguard attack at dawn.
10. Do not forbid the boys to go to the games.

SECTION III**Direct Commands (*continued*)**

I. A Direct Positive Command in the 2nd Person is often expressed by "cūrā," "cūrā ut," "fac," "fac ut," with the Present Subjunctive, in the sense of

"Be sure to," "See that," "Mind that," "Take care that."

E.g. **Cūrā hīc maneās**—Mind you stay here.

Fac veniās—Be sure to come.

II. A Direct Negative Command (*i.e.* a Direct Prohibition) in the 2nd Person is often expressed by "cavē," "cavē nē," with the Present Subjunctive, in the sense of, "Be sure not to," "See that you don't."

E.g. **Cavē nē hōc dīcās**—See you don't say this.

III. "And . . . not," or "nor," connecting two commands, is usually expressed by "nēve" or "neu," occasionally by **neque**, with the Perfect Subjunctive for the 2nd Person, and the Present Subjunctive for the 1st and 3rd Persons.

E.g. **Nē dederis nēve accēperis**—Neither give nor receive.

Abeāmus neu redeāmus—Let us depart and not return.

Exercise V

1. See that you always follow the advice of your parents.
2. Do not wage war with these brave men.
3. Beware of playing games in the streets.
4. Be not afraid, soldiers, and do not abandon the standards.
5. Be sure to send reinforcements at once.
6. Let us not pay our taxes, nor send our sons to the war.
7. Do not entrust the message to this slave.
8. Take care to buy him a better present next year.
9. Let us advance and not fear the barbarians.
10. Beware of swimming in the sea after dinner.

Exercise VI

1. Take care not to break the cups, girl.
2. Be brave, citizens, and do not surrender the city.
3. See that you finish the work in two hours.
4. Do not break your word, citizens.
5. Come with me to town, and do not idle here.
6. Mind that you are not seen by the robbers.
7. Let us not destroy this beautiful city.
8. Take care not to fall into the river, my son.
9. Praise the consuls, and do not blame the senate.
10. Be sure to write to me oftener.

SECTION IV**Indirect Commands. (Sequence of Tenses)**

Verbs of advising, warning, urging, ordering, asking, etc., are generally followed by the infinitive in English.

E.g. I asked him to come.

He warned me to be silent.

But in Latin these verbs **must** be followed by the **Subjunctive Mood**, introduced by **ut** when Positive and **nē** when Negative.

E.g. **Eum rogō ut veniat**—I ask him to come.

Mē monuit nē hōc facerem—He warned me not to do this.

SEQUENCE OF TENSES.—If the Verb in the Principal Clause is Present, Future, or Perfect (with "have"), the Verb in the Subordinate Clause is Present Subjunctive.

If the Verb in the Principal Clause is Imperfect, Perfect (without "have"), or Pluperfect, the Verb in the Subordinate Clause is Imperfect Subjunctive.

<i>E.g.</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{rogō—I ask him} \\ \text{Eum } \text{rogābō—I shall ask him} \\ \text{rogāvī—I have asked him} \end{array} \right\}$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{ut veniat—to} \\ \text{come.} \end{array} \right.$
	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Eum } \text{rogābam—I was asking him} \\ \text{rogāvī—I asked him} \\ \text{rogāveram—I had asked him} \end{array} \right\}$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{ut venīret—to} \\ \text{come.} \end{array} \right.$

N.B. *iubeō*—I order, and *vetō*—I forbid, are followed by the Present Infinitive.

E.g. *Tē abire iubeō*—I order you to go away.

Ignēs fieri vetuit—He forbade fires to be made.

iubeō . . . *nōn* must never be used for order . . . not; use either *imperō nē* or *vetō*.

E.g. I order you not to do this—

(a) *Tē hōc facere vetō*.

or (b) *Tibī imperō nē hōc faciās*.

Exercise VII

1. I shall ask them to send the eggs at once.
2. Do not urge us to release the prisoners.
3. Let us advise her to go to her friend at Corinth.
4. Our men were warned to keep their ranks.
5. Let them advise the farmers not to lose heart.
6. I told the boys to stay in the garden.
7. We were ordered to leave for Rome on the ninth day.
8. Let us beg him not to shout in the temple.
9. I have never asked you to read our book.
10. Urge the troops to fight as bravely as possible.

Exercise VIII

1. He asked his wife not to give money to beggars.
2. We shall order the Gauls to carry the booty into the camp.
3. The king forbade the citizens to remain in the streets.
4. Persuade your brother to receive a reward.
5. The shepherd was advised not to cross the mountain.
6. You ought to have warned your pupils to be silent.
7. Order your slaves not to open the gates.
8. You will never persuade us to buy your book.
9. I have ordered them to come back to the house to-morrow.
10. The foolish boy was often warned not to swim in that river.

Exercise IX

1. The woman implored the sailor to save her youngest son.
2. Why did you forbid the old man to sleep in your garden?
3. The citizens have been warned to build a higher wall.
4. I shall ask you to pay me the money in a few days.
5. We were often warned by the farmer to beware of the bull.
6. The queen persuaded the envoys to hand over eleven hostages.
7. A good general will urge his men to win the victory.
8. The shepherd warned the cavalry not to cross the marsh.
9. I beg you to try to finish the work to-day.
10. The sailors urged us not to fear the huge waves.

SECTION V

The Infinitive as Complement

The following Verbs take the Infinitive as Complement:

dēbeō —ought.	soleō —be accustomed.
volō —wish.	doceō —teach.
nōlō —be unwilling, refuse.	sciō —know how to.
mālō —prefer, would rather.	dubitō —hesitate (after a negative).
sinō —allow.	cōstituō, statuō —resolve.
dēsinō —cease.	cōnor —try.
incipiō, coepī —begin.	cōgō —compel.
cupiō —desire.	
prohibeō —prevent.	

Exercise X

1. All children ought to know how to swim.
2. We cannot prevent the cattle from destroying the crops.
3. Some were able to advance, others halted at once.
4. I have never been accustomed to remain in Carthage in spring.
5. The robbers were compelled to give up their prisoners.
6. You ought to have allowed your friends to do this.
7. Many women teach their own sons to read and write.
8. When will you begin to decorate the new temple, citizens?
9. Don't try to restrain a keen dog.
10. The brave girl did not hesitate to enter the cold water.

Exercise XI

1. Why does the master compel us to learn Greek?
2. We are not accustomed to rise before dawn.
3. The one boy preferred to sleep in the sun, the other to walk in the woods.
4. The rain prevented us from starting for school.
5. The ignorant woman did not know how to cook eggs.
6. I refuse to allow you to write Latin to-day.
7. The dogs did not hesitate to follow the wolf into the cave.
8. The farmer forbade us to climb his trees.
9. We were prevented by the shepherd from attempting to cross the marsh.
10. Why do you desire to cross the sea in winter?

Exercise XII

1. I warn you not to stop working.
2. Take care not to allow him to make a speech.
3. Ask your mother to teach you to sing.
4. We cannot swim in the deep river.
5. They will not allow you to throw away your shield.
6. (When I was) a boy, I was accustomed to ride a horse.
7. Why can you not prevent your dog from biting us?
8. See that you begin to plough the fields at once.
9. Order your sons not to break my windows with stones.
10. Once we did not know how to build war-ships.

SECTION VI

Negative Conjunctions

- (1) **neque** (**nec**) . . . **neque** (**nec**)—neither . . . nor.

E.g. **Neque** Caesar adest **neque** Pompēius—
Neither Caesar nor Pompeius is present.

neque, used alone, takes the place of **et** . . . **nōn**.

Ad lūdum vēnistī neque labōrāvistī.

You have come to school and you have not worked.

- (2) **nē** . . . **quīdem**—not . . . even.

The word emphasised is placed between **nē** and **quīdem**.

E.g. not even the king—**nē rēx quīdem**.

Even you did not come—**Nē tū quīdem vēnistī**.

- (3) Note carefully the position of **nōn** with a Negative Pronoun, Adjective or Adverb.

nōn nēmō—a few, one or two, some one.

nēmō nōn—everyone.

nōn nihil—something.

nihil nōn—everything.

nōn nūllī—some.

nūllī nōn—all.

nōn numquam—sometimes.

numquam nōn—always.

(*i.e.* **nōn** negatives the word it immediately precedes.)

- (4) Note also that

“and no one” is **neque quisquam** (nor anyone).

“and nothing” „ **neque quidquam** (nor anything).

“and no” „ **neque ūllus** (nor any).

“and never” „ **neque umquam** (nor ever).

“and nowhere” „ **neque ūsquā** (nor anywhere).

- (5) *nōn solum . . . sed etiam*—not only . . . but also.
nōn modō nōn . . . sed nē . . . quīdem—not
only not . . . but not even.

E.g. *Nōn modō nōn saltāvit, sed nē cantāvit quīdem*—
Not only did he not dance, but he did not even sing.

N.B.—The second *nōn* of "*nōn modō nōn*" is omitted if the two negative clauses have the same verb.

E.g. *Nōn modō scribere, sed nē legere quidem possum*—
Not only am I not able to write, but I cannot even read.

Exercise XIII

1. He jumped down from his horse, and could not mount again.
2. Manlius did not praise even his own son.
3. They could neither wage war nor make peace.
4. He was corrupted neither by money nor gifts.
5. We have undertaken many tasks and finished nothing.
6. Quite a few (people) informed me of your arrival.
7. They came here two years ago, and have never gone away.
8. He never told a lie, not even (when he was) a boy.
9. You have not only not learned these lines, but you have not even tried.
10. We set out last night, and no one saw us.

Exercise XIV

1. We came to the plain, and no house could be seen.
2. Neither the king nor his son will come to the games.
3. Everyone asked us to remain in the city.
4. The gates were opened, and no one went out.
5. Not only was I not dead, but I was not even ill.
6. Not even I advise you to be idle.

7. He works hard, and is never praised.
8. Not only the eggs but also the cups were broken by the maid.
9. Even you cannot open this door.
10. He ran into the wood and did not return.

REVISION

Exercise XV

1. I urged the slaves to remain in the fields.
2. See that you do not prevent him from working.
3. Let us not stay long in this town.
4. When will they begin to build the new house?
5. I know the man: he does not seem to know me.
6. You ought not to hate your father, boys.
7. I warn you not to swim in this lake.
8. We have been writing books for a long time now.
9. Have you always been accustomed to live out-of-doors?
10. Do not sing here, and do not come back again.

Exercise XVI

1. We have been living at Athens for many months.
2. The boys have been forbidden to play in the streets.
3. Why does the consul not hesitate to leave the camp?
4. Be sure to ask your friend to come to dinner.
5. When will you persuade the lazy girl to help her mother?
6. Not even Caesar can save the Roman people.
7. They have lived here a long time, and know nobody.
8. Be good, my son, and do not listen to these men.
9. A few days ago I was sitting in my garden.
10. The city began to be besieged by two armies.

Exercise XVII

1. Do not travel to Rome without me.
2. Not even the best boy could finish the task in three hours.
3. Let us guide the old man to the forum.
4. Stop asking me to sell my farm.
5. Be sure to compel the Gauls to give hostages.
6. Can this boy be prevented from sleeping in school?
7. Neither you nor I can run twenty miles.
8. I was warned not to attempt to cross the plain at night.
9. See that you do not destroy the master's book.
10. The king forbade the envoys to enter the palace.

SECTION VII**Indirect Statement (I)**

An Indirect Statement in Latin corresponds to a Subordinate Noun Clause in English (1) introduced by the conjunction "that," and (2) governed by a verb of saying, thinking, believing, knowing, etc.

The Subject of an Indirect Statement is in the Accusative Case: the Verb is in the Infinitive Mood.

N.B.—The English conjunction "that" is always omitted in translation, as it often is in English.

E.g. I think (that) you are wise—
Putō tē sapientem esse.

Common verbs taking this construction are:—

dīcō—I say; **negō**—I deny, I say not; **crēdō**—I believe; **putō, exīstimō, arbitror, reor**—I think; **audiō**—I hear; **sentiō**—I feel, realise; **intellegō**—I understand; **sciō**—I know; **nesciō**—I do not know; **cōgnōscō**—I ascertain, learn; **affirmō**—I declare; **nūntiō**—I announce; **respondeō**—I answer; and the phrases **certiōrem faciō**—I inform; **certior fiō**—I am informed.

TENSE.—The Tense of the Infinitive is determined by the Tense of the Direct Statement: *e.g.* “He said that I was a Gaul.” The Direct Statement is “You are a Gaul”: therefore the Present Infinitive is used in the Indirect Statement—**Dixit mē Gallum esse.**

“He thought I would not come.” Direct: “He will not come.”

Putāvit mē nōn ventūrum esse.

Exercise XVIII

1. The boy said the wolf was coming.
2. I was informed that you would arrive soon.
3. Why do you think all sheep are white?
4. I perceive that the girls do not understand this book.
5. The master saw that the window had been broken.
6. I could not say I was willing to make a treaty.
7. Reply at once that you will come to-morrow.
8. Who will inform the king we have been defeated?
9. The scouts reported that the river was very deep.
10. We thought the Gauls would capture the city.

Exercise XIX

1. The slaves declared the fields had been laid waste.
2. The prisoner answered that he could not speak Latin.
3. We thought the general would give us many gifts.
4. I do not think that the daughter is more beautiful than her mother.
5. We all know that Caesar was killed by a friend.
6. I am sure you will never deceive your mother.
7. Do not imagine that you know everything.
8. Why did you say that you captured the lion?
9. I did not know that the bridge had been built.
10. You believe your father was in Rome a few days ago.

Exercise XX

1. We did not know the judge had condemned these robbers.
2. Try to understand that you are not the only brave man.
3. The scout reported that the enemy had retreated by night.
4. I have often felt I could endure adversity.
5. The consul does not know that your son betrayed the legion.
6. I think I shall give you a harder task to-morrow.
7. They never thought we should capture the trenches.
8. When did you learn that I had returned to Rome?
9. I shall always believe that you wrote this book.
10. We replied that we would soon compel them to surrender the citadel.

SECTION VIII

Indirect Statement (II)

Say . . . not. *Dicō* is never followed by a negative word. *Negō*—I *deny*, I *say* . . . *not*, must be used.

E.g. *Negō* Caesarem adesse—

I say Caesar is not here.

Negō quemquam hōc fēcisse—

I deny that anyone has done this.

or I say that no one has done this.

N.B. *nōn dicō* is quite different : *e.g.* *nōn dicō* puerum adesse—
I do not say the boy is present (although I think so).

Pronouns and Adjectives. In an Indirect Statement “he,” “she,” “they,” must be translated by the Reflexive Pronoun “*sē*,” if the reference is to the subject of the Principal Clause.

Similarly the Possessive Adjective “*suus*, -a, -um” must be used, if “his,” “her,” “their,” refers to the subject of the Principal Clause, and is to be emphasised.

If the Pronoun or Possessive Adjective refers to a different person, use the Demonstrative Pronouns “*eum*,” “*eam*”; “*eōs*,” “*eās*,” and the possessive forms “*ēius*”; “*eōrum*,” “*eārum*.”

E.g. *Dicit sē* hōc scīre—

He says he (**himself**) knows this.

Dicit eum hōc scīre—

He says he (**someone else**) knows this.

Puer dicit sē librum ***suum*** habēre—

The boy says he has **his** (own) book.

Puer dicit sē librum ***ēius*** habēre—

The boy says he has his (someone else's) book.

Exercise XXI

1. I said I did not see the camp.
2. Why do you say that he cannot sing?
3. The farmer thought he was becoming rich.
4. Who said I had never been in Gaul?
5. We answered that we could not make a treaty on these terms.
6. I said that no one had asked-for help.
7. The old men said they had never done this (when) boys.
8. We were informed you had been seen on the top of the hill.
9. When did you say that he had given nothing to the poor?
10. The messenger declared that the enemy would soon come into sight.

Exercise XXII

1. Do not say you were the first to leave home.
2. He says he will not go to Spain with his three daughters.
3. Why do you say he is not a Roman citizen?
4. I know that he has never deceived your father.
5. The girls said they had not worked very hard.
6. He replied that both he himself and his wife were well.
7. We said that nothing would compel us to fight.
8. The king of the Persians said his men had become women.
9. The queen thought she had heard that tale before.
10. I said I would not give the beggars money.

Exercise XXIII

1. He said he owed money to no one.
2. I wish to deny that I ever betrayed any town.
3. The guide knew that the enemy would follow, not him, but them.
4. They said nothing could save them now.
5. He tried to deny that anyone had given him a reward.
6. The orator perceived that no one was listening to him.
7. I say that no woman can lift that load.
8. My wife says he will never persuade her.
9. He said that no soldier had left his post.
10. I said I did not think you had left Rome.

SECTION IX**Indirect Statement (III)**

iūrō — I swear; **minor** — I threaten; **prōmittō**, **polliceor** — I promise; **spērō** — I hope, are usually followed by the Accusative and **Future Infinitive**.

E.g. "I hope to come" becomes in Latin: I hope that I shall come—**Spērō mē ventūrum esse**.

Note.—Occasionally the sense will call for a present infinitive. *E.g.* **Spērō tē valēre**—I hope (=trust) you are well. This applies always to "**possum**," which has no future infinitive, *e.g.* **Spērat sē venīre posse**—He hopes to be able to come.

The **Future Infinitive Passive** is formed by the

Supine in **-um**, (which is the Accusative Case of a verbal noun), and **"īrī"** (the Present Infinitive Passive of **"eo"** —I go).

E.g. **Putō mulierēs interfectum īrī**—

I think the women will be killed; (*literally*, there is a movement on foot to kill the women).

fore ut. If the verb has no Supine, and, consequently, no Future Participle, the Future Infinitive Active and Passive is replaced by the Impersonal construction **fore ut** (*lit.* it will be that) with the Present Subjunctive after a Primary Tense, Imperfect Subjunctive after an Historic Tense (**fore** is the Future Infinitive of **"sum"**).

E.g. **Spērō fore ut hostēs arceās**—

I hope you will ward off the enemy.

Spērāvī fore ut hostēs arcērēs—

I hoped you would ward off the enemy.

N.B.—This construction may *always* be used, and is preferable to the ordinary Future Infinitive Passive construction.

Thus, **"Spērō fore ut novae cōpiae mittantur"** is preferable to **"Spērō novās cōpiās missum īrī."**

Exercise XXIV

1. Our men thought they would see the river from the hill.
2. We used-to-hope that we would be set free by the Romans.
3. The recruits have sworn to follow the general.
4. The consul declared that the town would be sacked next day.
5. That friend of yours promised to return me the money soon.

6. The girl said she would not see her father for many months.
7. The pirates promised to land the sailors on the island.
8. We hope you will be able to start at once.
9. Neither you nor I believe that the temple will be destroyed.
10. Why does he threaten to drive us out of the country?

Exercise XXV

1. He told me he would stay at Cicero's house.
2. I hope to take you with me to Corinth.
3. We did not think that all the prisoners would be put to death by the cruel king.
4. He promised that two new houses would be built in this street.
5. I swear I will not break the laws.
6. I hope all the boys will look after their books carefully.
7. The priest assured us that no animal would be injured.
8. Hannibal swore to wage war against the Romans.
9. The sailors were sure that the ship would be driven on the rocks.
10. The doctor promised to visit the sick man every day.

Exercise XXVI

1. They hoped they would always be able to buy food.
2. Do not threaten to punish your pupils too severely.
3. We hope these troublesome citizens will be imprisoned.
4. I believe that the city will be besieged all winter.
5. They boasted that they would be the last to yield.

6. The fierce tribes threatened to lay waste the queen's lands.
7. I had hoped you would be able to come with me to the games.
8. Don't forget you will soon be an old man.
9. The scouts reported that the bridge would be broken at dawn.
10. I swear to return to Carthage in a few months.

Continuous Prose

Hitherto we have been dealing with separate sentences to illustrate points of grammar and syntax. The next step is to consider sentences in conjunction, or a group of sentences forming a continuous narrative. We shall see that the procedure in Latin differs very widely in many respects from that in English. At this point the Introduction ought to be carefully studied.

To accustom the learner to the general outline of narrative, the following proses have been simplified, and require merely the use of rules previously learned.

Exercise XXVII

Then Curio withdrew to the camp at Bagrađa, where he was hailed as "Imperator" by the whole army. On the next day he led his army to Utica: his camp was pitched near the town. In a short time horsemen *on picket duty** reported that large reinforcements of cavalry and infantry were approaching Utica. At the same time a great cloud of dust was seen; and before long the vanguard was in sight. Curio at once ordered his horsemen to go forward; meanwhile he himself quickly drew up his line of battle.

* *ex statione.*

Exercise XXVIII

In a few hours the Roman fleet arrived from Messana. All the soldiers disembarked at once; before sunset they had entered the town. Next day Hannibal moved nearer the walls. But suddenly the gates were opened; the Romans sallied out. The enemy were caught unprepared, and two hundred of them were killed. Hannibal perceived that the consul was present in person; accordingly he withdrew to his own lines. Then, by means of a spy, he ordered the townsmen to resist as long as possible; he himself marched away from the town with his army. But the townsmen swore that they would not remain; they resolved to follow Hannibal without delay.

SECTION X**Indirect Statement (IV)**

Verbs expressing such emotions as joy, sorrow, wonder, etc., may take the Accusative and Infinitive construction, *e.g.* **gaudeō**—I rejoice, am glad; **doleō**—I grieve; **mīror**—I wonder, am surprised; **indīgnor**—I am angry; **aegrē ferō**—I am annoyed.

E.g. **Gaudeō tē advēnisse**—

I am glad you have arrived.

Note.—These verbs may also be followed by a *Quod* clause (see Section LI).

simulō—I pretend (to be what I am not), I feign;
dissimulō—I pretend (not to be what I am), I conceal,
must be followed by the *Accusative* and Infinitive.

E.g. **Simulat sē esse stultum**—

He pretends to be a fool.

Exercise XXIX

1. This boy pretends to love my brother.
2. The citizens rejoiced that the bill had been passed.
3. I am sorry that you have lost your money.
4. We were surprised that you did not listen to the orator.
5. Let us rejoice that you all have returned safe.
6. Why do you wonder at his being made consul?
7. We are indignant that he has not given us a share of the spoil.
8. Do not be surprised that he is sitting alone.
9. We are grieved that the work is not yet finished.
10. Why did you pretend that you could not write?

Exercise XXX

1. We are glad he cannot stay longer with us.
2. Do not be indignant that the army has not won a victory.
3. The dog pretended it had not heard the shepherd's voice.
4. I am surprised that no one has seen the caves.
5. Your father was glad that you had not broken your word.
6. Some children pretended to be Romans, others to be Gauls.
7. The prisoners are indignant that they are receiving bad food.
8. We were not surprised that he obtained the first prize.
9. He used to pretend he was not a coward.
10. I am glad you sent flowers to the poor woman.

SECTION XI

Inquit, Ferunt, etc.

General expressions, such as *ferunt*—they say; *trādunt*—they report; *cōstat*—it is well known; *appāret, manifestum est*—it is clear, evident; *vērū est*—it is true; *falsum est*—it is false; *vērī simile est*—it is probable, are followed by the Accusative and Infinitive.

“*inquit*”—“he says,” or “he said,” is used when the direct words of the speaker are quoted. It is never placed at the beginning of a sentence, but always after one or two words of the quotation.

E.g. “*Patriam,*” *inquit*, “*semper amābō.*”

“I shall always love my country,” he said.

Exercise XXXI

1. They say our men have been driven back to the shore.
2. It is well known to all that you were last to arrive.
3. It was clear that the centre of the army was retreating.
4. “Let us return home,” he said, “and not endure these insults.”
5. It is evident that you promised to help the Athenians.
6. The story goes that three hundred men were killed in that valley.
7. It was well known that the robber was hiding in the cave.
8. It is clear that they have been well taught.
9. “I do not admire that woman’s dress,” he said.
10. It is probable that we shall start to-morrow.

Exercise XXXII

1. The story goes that Romulus founded the city of Rome.
2. "I shall never forget," he said, "that I am a Roman citizen."
3. It is evident that you have not worked hard.
4. Everybody agrees that we ought to read as many books as possible.
5. It was probable that the slave committed the crime.
6. They say that the human race once lived in trees.
7. "It is not true," he said, "that I have become rich."
8. There is a rumour that the king has been killed.
9. It was not clear that the women were annoyed with the priest.
10. They say (there) was a great storm twenty years ago.

SECTION XII

Dīcor, Trādor, Videor, etc.

The verbs "*nūntior*," "*dīcor*," "*videor*," "*exīstimor*," "*putor*," "*trādor*," are not used impersonally in the simple tenses (*i.e.* the Present, Imperfect and Future).

E.g. It seems that he was a coward—

Ignāvus fuisse vidētur—lit. He seems to have been a coward.

Similarly, It is said that you are a Roman citizen—

Civis Rōmānus esse dīceris.

N.B. “*vidētur*” may be used impersonally with the meaning “it seems good,” “it is resolved.”

E.g. *Abire mihi vidētur*—“It seems good, I am resolved, to go away.”

In *composite tenses* these verbs are used *impersonally*.

E.g. *Trāditum est rēgem advēnisse*—

It was reported that the king had arrived.

Crēditur—“it is believed” is invariably impersonal.

Exercise XXXIII

1. It seems that you are unwilling to help me.
2. We are resolved to pitch camp near the river.
3. It is said that he ran fifty miles in one day.
4. You are considered to be the most stupid of all the boys.
5. It is believed that there is a spy in the camp.
6. It was announced that the enemy was in sight.
7. This road is said to be very dangerous.
8. It seems that your friend cannot swim.
9. He is resolved to leave the island without delay.
10. You are said to have fought very bravely, my sons.

Exercise XXXIV

1. It was reported that the sixth legion captured two thousand men.
2. You seem to me to have broken your promise.
3. It is said that he refused to fight for his country.
4. We are thought to be very rich.
5. This woman seems to have talked too much.
6. You will be said to have lost heart.

7. The senate resolved to send recruits to the army at Capua.
8. The Gauls seem to have suffered a severe defeat.
9. Our ancestors are thought to have been wiser than we.
10. It is believed that few have escaped from the pirates.

SECTION XIII

Verbs with Different Constructions

Certain verbs may be used with different constructions, varying according to the meaning. Of these the most common are :—

moneō—I warn, advise.

suādeō—I urge; **persuādeō**—I persuade.

cōstituō—I resolve, determine.

scribō—I write.

E.g. **Tē moneō eum adesse** (Indirect Statement).

I warn you that he is present.

Tē moneō ut adsīs (Indirect Command).

I warn you to be present.

Note.—**suādeō** and **persuādeō** are followed by the Dative Case of the person affected.

N.B.—Beware of the word “tell.”

He told me a story—

Fābulam mihi narrāvit.

He told me to come—

Mē venīre iūssit or **mihi imperāvit ut venīrem.**

He told me that you would come—

Mihi dīxit
Mē certiōrem fēcit } **tē ventūrum esse.**

Exercise XXXV

1. I persuaded them that you were innocent.
2. He persuaded us to follow the king.
3. The boys were advised not to play in the deep snow.
4. We were warned that he was very stupid.
5. He resolved to return home in the morning.
6. The general resolved that reinforcements should be sent to the bridge.
7. Why did you tell us that the eggs were fresh?
8. The master told the boys to work hard.
9. I wrote to him not to delay longer in the country.
10. I shall write that I am willing to undertake the work.

Exercise XXXVI

1. He was warned not to attempt to leave the city.
2. I have already been told that the Gauls are approaching.
3. It is probable that the sailor will tell you a story about the battle.
4. I shall never persuade you to write Greek well.
5. He told us to buy food in the nearest shop.
6. The farmer's wife told me she had sold the milk.
7. I advised you to learn fifty lines.
8. Tell them the crops are ripe now.
9. She tried to persuade me that she was very beautiful.
10. Your mother told you not to stay longer in the water.

REVISION**Exercise XXXVII**

1. We reported that the fleet was in sight.
2. I shall persuade the judges that you are innocent.
3. Did you say that you could not stay longer?

4. I was warned not to buy bread in that shop.
5. The consul swore he would never return to Rome.
6. It was probable that the money had been lost.
7. How often has he told the same story?
8. I told the farmer I would buy a dozen eggs.
9. We hope to see the games to-morrow afternoon.
10. The queen was sorry that she had lost her ring.

Exercise XXXVIII

1. All were surprised that the doctor had not arrived.
2. Why do you pretend to be clever?
3. I know this can be done by the most stupid boy.
4. Persuade the farmer to sell a sheep to us.
5. I told you to wait for me on the bridge.
6. The robber promised to restore the money.
7. We shall reply that we have neither gold nor silver.
8. It is said that fifty thousand men were killed in one day.
9. I cannot ask you to stay here.
10. "My son," said the old man, "do not go to town without me."

Exercise XXXIX

1. Do not think we have been here long.
2. When will you realise that you ought to work?
3. No one believes that the general will be banished.
4. He will be warned that the river cannot be crossed.
5. Let us rejoice that the war has been finished.
6. They say that four legions will be sent to Gaul.
7. It was clear that the thief would be condemned.

8. You are thought to be a very bad citizen.
9. We are resolved to help the poorest children.
10. I was informed that both my brother and I had been accused by you.

Exercise XL

1. It is well known that the taxes will be very heavy.
2. I shall advise our friends to live out-of-doors.
3. "Let them be set free," he said, "and let them not return to our city."
4. The soldiers swore to save the consul's daughter.
5. It is probable that we shall be blamed by the people.
6. The doctor said that the sick man could not be cured.
7. Do not believe that the ships will be repaired in a few days.
8. It is believed that the picture will never be found.
9. We shall hope to see many (and) famous buildings in Rome.
10. It seems that you were the last to hear the news.

Exercise XLI

The barbarians were now approaching, and the gods themselves seemed to advise the Athenians to retreat. For the Athenians say that in the great temple at Athens dwells a huge serpent, and they believe that it is the guardian of the whole city. They were accustomed to give the serpent bread and honey, and hitherto the food had always been consumed. But at this time the serpent refused to eat. So the Athenians thought that even the gods had abandoned the citadel. Accordingly they resolved to send their wives and children to safety as quickly as possible.

Exercise XLII

The scouts, whom the Greeks had left on the heights of the island, hastily returned to the camp and informed their countrymen that the Persian fleet had been destroyed. Immediately the whole army declared that the gods were fighting for Greece, and returned thanks to Neptune, the god of the sea. Then they hastened to Artemisium, where they hoped to find the remnants of the enemy's fleet. For the second time they beached their war-ships on that part of the coast. From that day they have never ceased to worship Neptune.

SECTION XIV**Direct Questions (I)**

Direct Questions may be introduced by an Interrogative word, *e.g.*—

Quis ?	Who ?
Quid ?	What ?
Quantus ?	How great ?
Quālis ?	Of what sort ?
Quot ?	How many ?
Ecquis ? Num quis ?	Is there anyone who ?
Quōtus ?	Which of a series ?
Quotiēns ?	How often ?
Cūr ? (Quor ?)	Why ?
Quā rē ?	Why ? Wherefore ?
Quam ob rem ?	Wherefore ?
Ubi ?	Where ?
Unde ?	Whence ? From where ?
Quō ?	Where ? (= Whither ?)
Quō modō ?	How ? (In what way ?)

Quandō ?	When ?
Quam diū ?	How long ?
Quam ?	How ? (with Adjectives and Adverbs).
Quantum ?	How much ?
Uter ?	Which of two ?

N.B.—Quot annōs nātus est ?—

How old is he ? (*lit.* How many years has he been born ?)

Quōta hōra est ?—

What o'clock is it ?

Exercise XLIII

1. How many ships are in this harbour ?
2. Where are the caves to which you are leading us ?
3. How did he finish the work so quickly ?
4. What sort of shops are there in that street ?
5. When shall we return to our native land ?
6. Has anyone seen my books ?
7. How often do we think that we are foolish ?
8. What kind of friend is that brother of yours ?
9. Where shall we go this morning ?
10. Is there anyone who likes you ?

Exercise XLIV

1. To which of the two merchants does he owe money ?
2. At what o'clock do you rise in Rome ?
3. How old is your grandfather now ?
4. In which hand am I holding the apple ?
5. How many times has he told you the same story ?
6. How big was the fish that you caught in the lake ?
7. Why don't you try to write Latin better ?
8. When did the vanguard come into sight ?
9. How long shall we remain in this great city ?
10. Where did your friends start from ?

SECTION XV

Direct Questions (II)

Direct Questions may be introduced by an Interrogative Particle.

(1) *-nē*, added to the end of the first word of the sentence, asks a question to which the answer may be either "Yes" or "No."

E.g. Venīsne?—"Are you coming?"

N.B. *-nē* is joined to the first, *i.e.*, the emphatic word in the sentence.

E.g. Tēne culpat?—"Is it *you* he is blaming?"

Culpatne tē?—"Is he *blaming* you?"

(2) *nōnnē* introduces a question expecting the answer "Yes."

E.g. Nōnnē venīs? { "Surely you are coming?"
"You are coming, aren't you?"

(3) *num* introduces a question expecting the answer "No."

E.g. Num venis? { "Surely you are not coming?"
"You are not coming, are you?"

N.B.—"Anyone" after "num" is translated by *quis* (indefinite pronoun), and "anything" by "quid."

E.g. Num quis vēnit?—"Did anyone come?"

Num quid dixistī?—"Did you say anything?"

Exercise XLV

1. Have you seen the new temple?
2. Will you send me a dozen eggs, please?
3. Surely he can run faster than I?
4. You didn't return my books, did you?
5. Had you given all the arrows to the slaves?
6. Do they believe that we are speaking the truth?

7. The little boy can't see the games, can he?
8. Didn't you think he would never come?
9. Surely they have not been punished again?
10. Don't you understand the words of the master, my son?

Exercise XLVI

1. The farmer will not cut down all the trees, will he?
2. Surely you will order your dog to be quiet?
3. You will allow us to swim to-day, won't you, mother?
4. Does anyone believe I committed that crime?
5. Can we not compel our slaves to plough the fields more quickly?
6. You haven't given all your goods to the poor, have you?
7. Is it Caesar you wish to expel from his native land?
8. Haven't you ever tried to prepare dinner yourself?
9. Was it I who said that you were a fool?
10. They haven't promised to help us, have they?

SECTION XVI

Direct Questions (III)—Double Questions

Alternative or Double Direct Questions are introduced by **utrum** or **-nē** followed by **an**. The particle of the first question is sometimes omitted. Thus, "are you coming or staying?" may be rendered in three ways—

(1) **utrum** venīs **an** manēs?

(2) venīs**nē** **an** manēs?

(3) venīs **an** manēs?

"or not" in a Direct Question is translated by **an nōn**.

E.g. Are you coming or not?—

Venīsne **an nōn**?

Exercise XLVII

1. Is your sister at home or not ?
2. Did you speak or sing at the banquet ?
3. Do you prefer to walk or ride ?
4. Have I seen you before or not ?
5. Can he read or write ?
6. Are they willing to cross the marsh or not ?
7. Did he kill the robber with a sword or a spear ?
8. Will your father be made consul or not ?
9. Shall we go to the country or to the sea ?
10. Had they announced the defeat to the Roman people or not ?

Exercise XLVIII

1. Is the snow melting on the hill-tops or not ?
2. Did you give the beggar money or food ?
3. Is it my father or my mother you desire to see ?
4. Have they resolved to finish the work or not ?
5. Are you leaving for Carthage to-day or to-morrow ?
6. Is the story which you told us true or false ?
7. Was it you or your friend who returned first ?
8. Have you come from Corinth or Athens ?
9. Will he warn them again or punish them at once ?
10. Did the doctor come this morning ?

SECTION XVII**Indirect Questions (I)**

An Indirect Question is a Subordinate Noun Clause introduced by an interrogative word. The verb in the Principal Clause may be a verb of

“knowing,” “telling,” etc., and not necessarily a verb of “asking.”

E.g. “I know *who you are*.”

“Tell me *where you were*.”

“He asked *when I had returned*.”

The Clauses *in italics* are all Indirect Questions, and must have their verbs in the **Subjunctive Mood**.

SEQUENCE OF TENSES.—In Indirect Questions the Sequence of Tenses is as follows:—

(A) *Primary*—

Rogat—He asks	}	quid faciam—what I
Rogābit—He will ask		am doing.
Rogāvit—He has asked		quid fēcerim—what I
Rogāverit—He will have asked		did, have done.

(B) *Historic*—

Rogābat—He asked, was asking	}	quid facerem—what
Rogāvit—He asked		I was doing.
Rogāverat—He had asked		quid fēcissem—what
		I did, had done.

N.B.—The Future Subjunctive is expressed by the Future Participle and the Subjunctive of “sum”—Present Tense in Primary Sequence, Imperfect in Historic Sequence.

E.g. Rogat quid factūrus sim—

He asks what I will do, am about to do, am likely to do, am going to do.

Rogāvit quid factūrus essem—

He asked what I would do, was about to do, was likely to do, was going to do.

Note.—“*Why*,” in Indirect Questions is generally translated by “*quā rē*,” and “*how*” by “*quem ad modum*.”

Exercise XLIX

1. Tell me who you are.
2. I know what he saw.
3. Let us ask when the merchant will send the eggs.
4. Can you tell me whose book this is?
5. I don't wish to know how often you have been punished.
6. It is well known to everyone why he is present.
7. Ask the farmer how many cows he has bought to-day.
8. Does your mother know where my stick is?
9. He told us where you had gone.
10. I did not know how we had been defeated.

Exercise L

1. Do not forget how much you owe to your forefathers.
2. I do not understand why you are all laughing.
3. Show me how you are going to build the bridge.
4. Tell me at what o'clock you will sail.
5. Be sure to inform me whom you saw in the forum.
6. Ask the shepherd how many sheep he is guarding.
7. We know well what sort of a man you are.
8. We could never discover how the ship sank.
9. Have you heard when they are likely to return?
10. Who can tell me where these birds have come from?

SECTION XVIII**Indirect Questions (II)—Abstract form in English**

English often uses abstract nouns such as "nature," "extent," "amount," "character," "number," "object," "origin," "source," etc. These may, or must often, be expressed in Latin by an Indirect Question.

E.g. Tell me the

number, amount (=how many, *quot*).

size, extent (=how big, *quantus*).

character, nature (=of what sort, *quālis*).

object (=with what plan, *quō cōnsiliō*).

source, origin (=whence, *unde*).

reason (=why, wherefore, *quā rē*).

date (=when, *quandō*).

destination (=whither, *quō*).

method (=how, *quō modō, quem ad modum*).

I do not know his **object** in coming here—

Nesciō quō cōnsiliō hūc vēnerit.

We asked the **source** of his information—

Rogāvimus unde hōc cōgnōvisset.

Do you realise the **character** of your friend?—

Sentisnē quālis sit amicus tuus?

Exercise LI

1. Do you know the reason of his departure?
2. He asked the extent of our resources.
3. Find out the size of the enemy's camp.
4. Can you tell me the character of my son's friend?
5. Do you know the date of his election?
6. I could not understand his object in staying at home.
7. How many know the origin of the Britons?
8. The wise general will always examine the character of an enemy's country.
9. No one knows my destination.
10. We tried to find out the amount of the taxes.

Exercise LII

1. He explained to us the nature and extent of the empire.
2. Surely you remember the date of his arrival?
3. The source of that rumour is not clear.
4. Show me your method of writing a book.
5. I am quite aware of your object in retreating.
6. We tried in vain to ascertain the number of the birds.
7. The Britons do not yet understand the greatness of the danger.
8. Explain to me your motive in destroying these beautiful flowers.
9. Surely you do not know the nature of the task?
10. We could not find out the distance of the caves from the city.

SECTION XIX

Indirect Questions (III)—Alternative Indirect Questions

"Whether . . . or," "if . . . or," is translated, as in Alternative Direct Questions, by *utrum . . . an*.

E.g. *Rogāvī utrum puer adesset an abesset*—

I asked if the boy was present or absent.

N.B.—"If" or "whether" alone is translated by *num*.

E.g. *Rogāvī num puer adesset*—

I asked if the boy was present.

"Whether" ("if") . . . "or not" in an Indirect Question is translated by *utrum . . . necnē*.

E.g. *Nesciō utrum redierit necnē*—

I do not know whether he has returned or not.

Notice the phrases *nesciō an*, *haud sciō an*—I do not know whether, I am inclined to think, I rather think.

E.g. Nesciō an hōc vērū sit—

I rather think this is true.

Distinguish—

Nesciō quis loquātur—

I do not know who is speaking.

Nesciō quis loquitur—

Someone or other is speaking.

Exercise LIII

1. Tell me whether you saw him or not.
2. Do you know if they are at home or out of doors?
3. Some one or other has done this.
4. Can you tell me if (there) is a house in this wood?
5. I hope to find out if he committed the crime.
6. We asked if the money had been found or not.
7. I rather think that my friend lives in this street.
8. Tell me, please, if all the letters have been written or not.
9. Let us inquire if the king has returned or gone to the country.
10. I do not know whether he is still sleeping or not.

Exercise LIV

1. I am inclined to think you are telling a lie.
2. We cannot decide whether the dictator was killed rightly or wrongly.
3. I wonder if you are more foolish than your brothers.
4. Do you know if he has sold his house or not?
5. I shall ask you to-morrow whether you have learned these lines.
6. Teachers often wonder if their pupils are slacking.

7. It is not clear whether the ship was driven on the rocks by the wind or the waves.
8. The envoys asked the Greeks whether they wished for peace or war.
9. Tell me whether you wish to become a soldier or a priest.
10. No one can tell whether he saw us that night.

Exercise LV

Labienus extolled the plan of Pompey with the highest praise. "Do not think," he said "that this army conquered Gaul and Germany. A very small part of that army survives: a great part has been lost: the plague in Italy has carried off many, and many have returned home. Have you not heard from those who remained behind because of their health that cohorts were formed at Brundisium? These forces, which you see, have been reinforced from the levies of these years. Most of the bravest, however, have perished in two battles." Then he swore that he would not return unless victorious, and urged the others to do the same.

Exercise LVI

Caesar then marched into Italy with his whole army. He halted near the river Rubicon, and hesitated to advance further: for the laws of the state forbade a citizen to cross that river under arms. For a long time he remained uncertain, and could not decide whether he ought to invade his country, or yield to the senate and his rival Pompeius. At last he asked his friends whether they approved of his delay. With one voice they all replied: "Advance, and do not be afraid." "The die is cast," cried Caesar, and led his men into the water.

SECTION XX

Participles (I).

There are in Latin three Participles—Present, Future and Perfect.

E.g. **Amāns**—loving; **amātūrus**—about to love; **amātus**—(having been) loved.

N.B.—The Present and Future Participles are invariably Active. The Perfect Participle is Passive,* except in Deponent Verbs, where it is nearly always Active.

E.g. **Monitus**—“having been warned,” but **locūtus**—“having spoken.”

All Participles must agree with their own Noun or Pronoun in Gender, Number and Case.

The Present Participle is rarely used in the Nominative Case, except with the force of an adjective. Its range is much less extensive than that of the English Present Participle: it can only be used to denote uncompleted action which is simultaneous with the action of the main verb.

E.g. **Eum natantem vidi**—I saw him swimming.

An English Present Participle often denotes a completed action previous to the time of the principal verb: beware of using the Latin Present Participle to translate.

E.g. **Mounting his horse, he rode away.**

Reaching the city, he announced the victory.

Here “mounting” = “after mounting,” “having mounted”; similarly, “reaching” = “after reaching.” (For other translations of such forms see Section XXII.)

* Note the exceptions **cenātus**—having dined; **pōtus**—having drunk.

The Present Participle in oblique cases may take the place of a Subordinate Clause in English, or of an Abstract Noun.

E.g. The cries of those *who were standing by*—
Clāmōrēs adstantium.

Shouts of joy—Clāmōrēs gaudentium.

To their questions he replied (=to them questioning, he replied)—

E.g. Interrogantibus respondit.

The Future Participle has various shades of meaning, *e.g.* auditūrus may mean, "*about to hear*," "*ready to hear*," "*likely to hear*," "*destined to hear*," "*on the point of hearing*."

Exercise LVII

1. I asked the bystanders who the judge was.
2. (While) walking in the forest, the king was killed by an arrow.
3. Do not fear the threats of those-who-resist.
4. How often have you seen a house on fire?
5. I seem to see Catiline leading an army against the city.
6. To my question they replied that they had collected a fleet.
7. The shouts of indignation compelled him to flee.
8. The hunter found the animal lurking in the cave.
9. He said he would give nothing to those-who-complained.
10. These were the last words of the dying queen.

Exercise LVIII

1. We heard cries of mourning in the streets.
2. I saw her swimming across the bay.
3. The shouts of joy frightened the cowardly leader.
4. I have often heard Cicero speaking in the senate-house.
5. I myself saw the soldiers plundering the shops.
6. We replied to their questions that we had not seen the prisoner.
7. The faces of the combatants were bruised by their fists.
8. Many thousands of citizens welcomed the victor as-he-approached the gate.
9. I shall never try to help those-who-tell lies.
10. You heard him swearing he would not stay.

Exercise LIX

1. This soldier, who-was-destined-to-destroy Carthage, was the first to climb the wall.
2. He rose at dawn, intending-to-set out at once.
3. The teacher was not likely-to-give you the best books.
4. (As he was) about-to-say more, he refused to sit down.
5. Your wife is not likely-to-admire your new clothes.
6. The old man, on-his-death-bed, summoned his three sons.
7. To-morrow I intend-to-hear Cicero making a speech.
8. (When) on-the-point-of-killing the beast, I was prevented by the priest.
9. He returned to Rome, intending-to-look-for his sister.
10. (As I was) about-to-sit-down, I saw you coming into sight.

SECTION XXI

Participles (II)—Perfect Participles

N.B.—(1) Only Deponent Verbs have a Perfect Participle with active meaning. (*See footnote, p. 51.*)

(2) Only Transitive Verbs (governing the Accusative Case) have a Perfect Participle Passive that is used personally.

When two finite verbs have the *same* subject, one of them is often rendered by the Perfect Participle Passive.

E.g. He was captured by us and killed—

Ā nōbīs captus, interfectus est.

(*Lit.* Having been captured by us, he was killed.)

We took and burned the city—

Urbem captam incendimus.

(*Lit.* We burned the having-been-taken city.)

The Perfect Participle Passive combined with a noun often takes the place of an English abstract or verbal noun.

E.g. from the founding of the city—

ab urbe conditā.

the news of the victory—

victōriā nūntiātā.

the murder of Caesar—

Caesar interfectus.

Exercise LX

1. (Though) ordered to advance, they refused to leave the trenches.
2. (When) informed of your arrival, I asked my slave to buy wine.

3. We cut down the oldest trees and burned them.
4. The enemy were routed and fled to the ships.
5. The murder of Caesar alarmed the Roman people.
6. (After) lingering for many months in the country,
he at last returned to Rome.
7. Fearing* a sudden attack, Caesar crossed the Rhine.
8. Escorting him to the gate, I advised him to leave as
quickly as possible.
9. Returning from Carthage in his old age, he bought
a large house in Capua.
10. The news of the defeat did not frighten the women.

* *veritus*.

Exercise LXI

1. (After) venturing to blame his wife, the old man
was driven out of doors.
2. The general enrolled recruits and sent them to the
camp.
3. Having been often helped by you, I shall not blame
you now.
4. (After) being defeated, the Germans asked for an
armistice.
5. The magistrate arrested the thief and threw him
into prison.
6. A crowded senate applauded the speech made by
the consul.
7. Setting out without delay, we reached the city
before night.
8. The robbers, warned about the arrival of the soldiers,
fled to the mountains.
9. (After) speaking for three hours, the orator at
length sat down.
10. The natives, landing from the ship, ran at once
into the woods.

SECTION XXII

Participles (III)—Substitution

The Participle in Latin may be replaced by a subordinate clause introduced by "**cum**"—since (which always takes the Subjunctive Mood).

This construction is especially convenient in that it supplies an alternative translation for an English Participle where the corresponding Latin Participle does not exist.

Note that (1) there is no Perfect Participle Active in Latin, except in Deponent Verbs. (*See footnote, p. 51.*)

(2) There is no Present Participle Passive of any verb.

(3) *Sum* and its compounds have no Participles, exceptions being *absum*, which has *absēns*, absent, and *praesum*, which has *praesēns*, present.

E.g. Being unwilling to fight, he remained at home—

Cum pūgnāre nōllet, domī mānsit.

After warning me, they departed—

Cum mē monuissent, discesserunt.

Not being a fool, you will understand me—

Cum stultus nōn sīs, mē intellegēs.

This being the case, I trust you—

Quae **cum** ita sint, tibi cōfidō.

This being the case, I trusted you—

Quae **cum** ita essent, tibi cōfidēbam.

Exercise LXII

1. Not being able to storm the city, they departed.
2. Refusing to reply, he was condemned.
3. Seeing that she was sad, he too became silent.

4. Wishing to start before dawn, I summoned my servants.
5. The wounded soldier collapsed after walking two miles.
6. Crossing to the other bank of the river, I caught many fish.
7. That being so, I did not wish to stay longer at your house.
8. After advising us to give battle, he himself fled to safety.
9. I decided to stop after writing five hundred lines.
10. Not being able to come himself, he sent his eldest son.

Exercise LXIII

1. Ordering us to leave at once, he shut the door.
2. After walking in the fields in the morning, he used to work all day.
3. The robber ran away, after compelling me to give up my money.
4. Hoping to finish the task quickly, he worked all night.
5. Approaching the old man, I asked what he was doing.
6. Not being a coward, I refuse to betray my country.
7. Running to the nearest shop, she bought bread.
8. Having asked-for larger presents, the children were sent home.
9. After saying he could not come with me, he returned to the farm.
10. Being a very small girl, she was afraid of the dark.

SECTION XXIII

Participles (IV)—Ablative Absolute

A Participle, Present or Perfect, in agreement with a Noun or Pronoun in the Ablative Case, often takes the place of a Subordinate Adverbial clause. This is called the Ablative Absolute construction.

(This construction, when referring to the past, can be used only with the Perfect Participles Passive of Transitive and Deponent Verbs.)

E.g. Having killed the king
The king having been killed
When (since) he had killed the king } he fled—
Interfectō rēge, fūgit.

N.B.—If the Participle agrees with the Subject or Object of the Principal Clause, the Ablative Absolute construction must not be used.

E.g. Caesar, having captured the city, burned it—
Caesar urbem captam incendit.
(Caesar burned the having-been-captured city.)

Exercise LXIV

1. When this had been done, they went away.
2. After your work is finished, I shall allow you to play.
3. Learning these facts, he did not venture to advance further.
4. When the great war ended, all the citizens rejoiced.
5. The roads being blocked with snow, we were forced to stay at home.

6. How can you cross the river when the bridge has been broken?
7. On receiving the letter, he left the senate-house.
8. At the given signal, our men charged.
9. On seeing the robber, the shepherd fled.
10. After the pupils had been dismissed, the teachers examined the books.

Exercise LXV

1. As winter was approaching, all the ships returned to harbour.
2. On the news of the victory, the women decorated the streets.
3. After drawing up the army, the general made a long speech.
4. I shall buy new clothes when the taxes have been paid.
5. While you remain here, I shall never return.
6. On the death of the king, the city was surrendered.
7. Since food was running short, we decided to kill the cow.
8. Launching the ships, he set sail for Crete.
9. When the gates were opened, the townsmen rushed out.
10. After being defeated by Caesar, the Gauls were sent home.

SECTION XXIV

Participles (V)—Ablative Absolute (*continued*)

When the Present Participle is missing, (as in *esse*), a Noun or Adjective in agreement with another Noun or Pronoun may form an Ablative Absolute construction, *e.g.*—

Teucrō duce—Teucer (being) leader.

mē auctōre—on my suggestion.

mē puerō—in my boyhood, when I was a boy.

cōnsule Crassō—in the consulship of Crassus.

patre vīvō—my father being alive, in the lifetime of my father.

insciō Caesare—unknown to Caesar.

Rōmulō rēge—when Romulus was king, in the reign of Romulus.

Tiberiō prīncepe—when Tiberius was emperor.

puerō absente—in the boy's absence.

salvā fidē—keeping, without breaking, one's word.

salvis lēgibus—without breaking the laws.

tē invītō—against your will.

Marte aequō—Mars (being) equal, on equal terms.

adversō flūmine—up stream (*lit.* the stream opposing).

secundō flūmine—down stream (*lit.* the stream favouring).

Note also the phrases—

rē infectā—without accomplishing anything, without success.

causā indictā—without pleading one's case, without trial.

rē inaudītā—without a hearing.

Exercise LXVI

1. With Caesar as leader we shall never be defeated.
2. The young man tried in vain to swim up stream.
3. He sold the sheep without my knowledge.
4. No one should be condemned without trial.
5. While the good queen was alive, no one dared to do that.
6. This crime was committed at your instigation.
7. We cannot teach you to write Latin if you are unwilling.
8. In my absence the house was destroyed by fire.
9. If you keep your word, you will never be blamed.
10. They returned to the ships without accomplishing anything.

Exercise LXVII

1. During the reign of Nero, many (and) great crimes were committed.
2. The woman used to go to the shops without the knowledge of her husband.
3. It was against my will that you destroyed the temple.
4. Surely you are not afraid when I am your guide?
5. When Cato was censor, the Romans imitated ancient customs.
6. After trying for long to persuade the citizens, they went away unsuccessful.
7. They resolved to found a new colony under the auspices of Teucer.
8. A great poet was born in the consulship of Manlius.
9. I do not know why the envoys were dismissed without a hearing.
10. On your advice, I gave the blind beggar sixpence.

REVISION

Exercise LXVIII

1. How shall we find the path in this great forest?
2. Have you seen him in the ship or not?
3. Can you tell me why this door has been shut?
4. (While) sitting in the garden, I was watching the children.
5. Being unable to rise, he sent for the doctor.
6. In the reign of Numa many temples were built.
7. The news of the victory encouraged the besieged townsmen.
8. I asked the number and quality of the eggs.
9. Did your friends promise to help you?
10. This cannot be done in my father's lifetime.

Exercise LXIX

1. Beaching the ships, we made a camp near the shore.
2. Being accustomed to sleep well, he was able to endure great toils.
3. Why have you spent the money, unknown to your parents?
4. Was it Antonius you wished to make consul?
5. I do not know why you tell lies.
6. The noise of the bystanders prevented the orator from speaking.
7. You cannot form a conspiracy without breaking the laws.
8. Summer being at hand, all men rejoice.
9. The boy was caught and punished by his father.
10. That slave cannot carry a heavy load, can he?

Exercise LXX

1. He did not understand how I had repaired the window.
2. Did you ask if he could teach us or not?
3. Promising to return quickly, they ran to the ship.
4. When I was a boy, the winters were always very cold.
5. Tell us the extent of the disaster.
6. It was not clear whether the story was true or false.
7. After giving these instructions, I returned to the tower.
8. We ought not to throw these men into prison without a trial.
9. Surely we shall not be asked to pay the same taxes twice?
10. Having called the senate together, he explained what he intended to do.

Exercise LXXI

1. Climbing to the top of the mast, I saw a great fleet approaching.
2. They cannot accuse us without breaking their word.
3. When will you know the date of your departure?
4. Ask the merchant how many fish he can send.
5. I saw you running to school this morning.
6. Is the camp large enough or not?
7. While I was hiding in the wood, I saw many boats sailing down stream.
8. At what o'clock shall I return home?
9. We were not told where the guide was leading us.
10. When this was ascertained by means of scouts, the cavalry was sent forward at once.

Exercise LXXII

1. Had you remembered the names of all the girls or not?
2. We did not know when the master would give us the prizes.
3. My father cannot understand my object in leaving school.
4. When war was declared, all the citizens enlisted.
5. I know that the envoys were dismissed against your will.
6. I rather think he was the first to answer.*
7. Where did your ancestors come from?
8. Will you walk or ride to the lake?
9. The farmer took the ox to the village and sold it.
10. Tell me if you understand all my words.

* *he answered first.*

Exercise LXXIII

Hannibal, on being banished from Carthage, came to Ephesus. One day he was invited by his hosts to listen to a philosopher named Phormio. The story goes that the eloquent man spoke for several hours about the duty of a general. The others who were listening to him were greatly delighted, and asked Hannibal what was his opinion of the philosopher. It is said that the Carthaginian replied that he had often seen many crazy old men, but that he had never seen anyone crazier than Phormio.

Exercise LXXIV

Petronius, a centurion of the same legion, after trying to force open the gates, was overcome by the numbers of the enemy, and, after receiving many wounds, he began to despair. To his men he said:

"I cannot save myself, but I shall at least provide for your safety." At the same time he rushed into the midst of the enemy, and, killing two of them, drove the others a little way from the gates. His soldiers wished to help him; but, turning to them, he said: "In vain do you try to help me, my friends; my strength is already failing. I command you to retreat with all speed to the legion." Soon the brave centurion, left alone, fell fighting.

SECTION XXV

Final or Purpose Clauses (I)

Clauses which denote Purpose may be expressed by the Subjunctive Mood, introduced when positive by "ut"—that, in order that (or by "quī" (rel. pron.), mainly after verbs of motion); when negative by "nē"—lest, in order that . . . not.

SEQUENCE.—The Present Subjunctive is used after a Primary Tense, the Imperfect Subjunctive after an Historic Tense.

E.g. He does this that he may be praised—
Hōc facit ut laudētur.

He sent a slave to buy wine—
Servum mīsit quī vīnum emeret.

N.B.—Purpose is often expressed by the Infinitive in English, but never in classical Latin Prose. The "to" of an infinitive expressing purpose can always be turned into "in order that" in English.

E.g. I am coming to buy wine
= I am coming in order that I may buy wine—
Veniō ut vīnum emam.

Exercise LXXV

1. We sent slaves to ask-for food and water.
2. The pupils worked hard that the master might tell a story.
3. That he might not harm his country, he withdrew to Greece.
4. The wise father sends his son to the city to be trained.
5. Do not cross this bridge, lest you fall into the river.
6. He has come to Rome to stand for the consulship.
7. We sold the farm that we might be able to help them.
8. Why do you live to eat? You ought to eat to live.
9. Let us shut the gate to keep out the enemy.
10. The farmer went away to the hills to see the sheep.

Exercise LXXVI

1. Birds migrate to avoid the cold of winter.
2. You have not been sent here to waste your time.
3. The boy pretended to be ill that he might not be sent to school.
4. We ought to have summoned a doctor to heal the poor woman.
5. I plucked the beautiful flowers that they might not be destroyed by the rain.
6. Many famous men have come to live in this lovely valley.
7. You ought to send your son to buy a new coat.
8. To-morrow I shall go to the village to see the black bull.
9. Send me the best pupils, that I may teach them Greek.
10. Hannibal took poison, lest he might fall alive into the hands of the Romans.

SECTION XXVI

Final Clauses (II)

"*nē*" expresses the English "to avoid" or "to prevent."

E.g. He did this to avoid capture—
Hōc fēcit nē caperētur.

I sent a message to prevent you from returning home—
Nūntium mīsī, nē domum redīrēs.

N.B.—(1) "In order that no one," "lest anyone," is expressed by *nē quis*.

"In order that nothing," "lest anything," is expressed by *nē quid*.

"In order that no, none," "lest any," is expressed by *nē ūllus*.

"In order that never," "lest ever," is expressed by *nē umquam*.

E.g. We fled that no one might see us—
Fūgimus nē quis nōs vidēret.

(2) If there are two or more Final Clauses in the same sentence, they are connected by *nēve* or *neu*.

E.g. To avoid seeing or hearing his father, he went away—
Nē patrem vidēret neu audīret, abiit.

(3) When the Final Clause contains a **Comparative** Adjective or Adverb, "that" is translated by *quō*.

E.g. He rose early to finish the work more quickly—

Quō celerius opus cōficeret, māne surrēxit.

Note the phrase *eō cōsiliō ut*—with the intention of.

Exercise LXXVII

1. To prevent us crossing the river, he sent two cohorts to the ford.
2. He sold his house that he might buy horses.
3. I did this that you might not blame or punish me.
4. To prevent anyone leaving the house, I closed all the doors.
5. Let us always be honest, that no master may be annoyed with us.
6. In order to make the camp larger, the soldiers toiled all night.
7. He stayed at home to avoid meeting us.
8. They built three bridges that greater forces might advance at once.
9. Why did you not come to help me this morning?
10. At my suggestion he kept silent, to avoid losing his money.

Exercise LXXVIII

1. Lest we should be idle or waste time, we were all sent to school.
2. He left home in the afternoon with the intention of walking to the nearest village.
3. Give me your horse, that I may travel faster.
4. To prevent the prisoners escaping, we bound them with chains.
5. Start at once, that you may return sooner.
6. I shall punish you severely, that you may never tell a lie again.
7. The enemy blockaded the harbour, that no food might be brought to the town by sea.

8. My wife and I came to Rome with the intention of buying new furniture.
9. Read as many books as possible, that you may become wiser.
10. They brought back the wounded king by night, that no soldier might lose heart.

Exercise LXXIX

Solon, the Athenian, after having made laws for his fellow-citizens, left home for ten years, and set out to see the world. He did this lest he might be compelled to repeal the laws made by himself. The Athenians could not repeal them; for they had sworn to abide for ten years by the laws of Solon. For this reason, then, he left Athens, and came to Croesus at Sardis. In a few days Croesus ordered his servant to show Solon the royal treasures. When Solon had seen everything, Croesus questioned him as follows: "O Solon, we have heard that you have travelled far to see the world. Now, therefore, I ask you if you have ever seen anyone more fortunate than I?"

Exercise LXXX

After Veii had been captured by Camillus, the soldiers, on the order of the general, were transporting to Rome a statue of Juno, which was worshipped there with great piety. The soldiers began to move the statue from its seat, and one of them, by way of a joke, asked the goddess if she wished to migrate to Rome. To his surprise he heard a voice reply that she did wish to go there. The soldiers now believed that they were carrying, not only a statue, but the goddess herself, and

so they placed the statue on a waggon with great care, and brought it to the city. The people, thinking that the goddess would now protect them, joyfully received the statue, and placed it on the Aventine hill, where they decided to build a beautiful temple to guard it.

SECTION XXVII

Consecutive Clauses (I)

Clauses which denote **Consequence** or **Result** are expressed by the **Subjunctive** Mood, introduced, when Positive, by **ut** ("that," "so that") and, when Negative, by **ut . . . nōn** ("so that" . . . not).

SEQUENCE OF TENSES.—The Tense of the Subjunctive is determined by the meaning of the English.

E.g. He was so badly wounded that

(he is dying—	moriātur.
he will die—	moritūrus sit.
he was dying—	morerētur.
he died—	mortuus sit.

Tam grave vulnus accēpit ut

N.B.—To express a Consequence in Past Time after an Historic Tense, a choice has to be made between the Imperfect and Perfect Subjunctive. The Imperfect expresses **continuous** action or state in the past, the Perfect expresses a **completed** fact or action.

E.g. The soldier was so tired that he fell and lay on the ground—
Tam fessus erat miles ut conciderit et hūmī iacēret.

Notes.—(1) "so" before an Adjective or Adverb is "**tam.**"
 "so" before a Verb is "**adeō.**"

(2) For "so great" use "**tantus.**" (rather than "**tam magnus.**")

For "so many" use "**tot.**" (rather than "**tam multī.**")

For "so often" use "**totiēns.**" (rather than "**tam saepe.**")

Exercise LXXXI

1. The eggs are so bad that I shall send them back to the farmer.
2. So serious was the wound that he could not move.
3. I have listened to him so often that I am tired.
4. We are so few that we dare not remain here.
5. No one is so brave as not to fear death.
6. My grandfather is not so stupid as to blame children.
7. This book is so easy that all understand it.
8. So great a storm arose that the ship sank.
9. You are so lazy, my son, that I cannot praise you.
10. The load was so heavy that I carried it with difficulty.

Exercise LXXXII

1. The dog ran so quickly that we could not catch it.
2. He fell with such force that he broke his arm.
3. He has lied so often that we shall never trust him.
4. We have lost so many men that we are compelled to ask for terms.
5. The prisoner was so ill that he could scarcely stand.
6. The dinner was such that we could not eat it.
7. Your son is so young that he ought not to travel alone.
8. The older boy worked so well that he surpassed all the rest.
9. Such * was the strength of the wave that it broke the mast.
10. Your friend is so big that he cannot enter the house.

* = *so great*.

SECTION XXVIII

Consecutive Clauses (II)

"That nobody" in a Consecutive Clause is *ut nēmō*.

"That nothing" in a Consecutive Clause is *ut nihil*.

"That no" in a Consecutive Clause is *ut nūllus*.

"That never" in a Consecutive Clause is *ut numquam*.

"As to" before an infinitive and indicating consequence is translated by "*ut*."

E.g. He is so stupid as to believe you—

Tam stultus est ut tibi crēdat.

"To the extent . . . that" may be translated by *ita . . . ut*.

E.g. *Ita fēlix es ut caelebs sis—*

You are lucky to this extent that you are a bachelor.

"Without" is sometimes expressed by *ita . . . ut nōn*.

E.g. He can't do this without making a mistake—

Hōc ita facere nōn potest ut nōn erret.

Exercise LXXXIII

1. No one is so ignorant as not to know who you are.
2. You are so angry that no one ventures to approach you.
3. There were so many words in that book that I could not count them.
4. We cannot work without resting sometimes.
5. The slave was so poor that there was nothing in his house.
6. You are clever to the extent that you are never blamed.

7. Surely you are not foolish enough to deceive your father?
8. You have behaved so badly that I shall not invite you to dinner again.
9. I never go into the market-place without seeing that man.
10. I have warned you so often that I refuse to speak to you again.

Exercise LXXXIV

1. They were guiltless to the extent that they had not themselves killed the king.
2. She was so thin that no one thought she would live.
3. You can't do such things without paying the penalty.
4. The smoke was so thick that nothing could be seen.
5. He was not so ill as not to be able to get up.
6. The girl was not tall enough to touch the top of the window.
7. I was so terrified that I never looked back.
8. The city was so quiet that no sound could be heard.
9. This slave is cunning enough to deceive his master.
10. He was so poor that he used to sing in the streets.

Exercise LXXXV

The consul Coriolanus was so angry with the Romans that he fled to his old enemies, the Volsci, and persuaded them to avenge their former defeat. Thereupon they collected a large army, and, with Coriolanus as leader, marched on Rome, and pitched camp before the gates of the town. The Romans in alarm sent envoys to ask for

terms of peace, first the most ^{notable} notable citizens, and then the priests; but Coriolanus could be moved neither by their eloquence nor by their tears.

Exercise LXXXVI

At last his mother, Veturia, along with his wife and two children came to beseech him to spare the city. It is said that he was so moved after hearing them that he exclaimed: "You have conquered me, my country, by a mother's prayers." Then, embracing his wife and children, he led away the army of the Volscians, who, shortly afterwards, condemned him for treason (*gen.*), and put him to death.

SECTION XXIX

Consecutive Clauses (III)

"Quī" Consecutive or Characteristic with the Subjunctive Mood is used after the following words:—

dīgnus—worthy.

indīgnus—unworthy.

idōneus—suitable.

aptus—fitting.

tālis—such.

ūnus, sōlus—the (only) one.

is, ea—the man, the woman (to).

E.g. dīgnus est quī cōsul fīat—

He deserves to be made consul.

ūnus tū es quī hōc faciās—

You are the one man to do this.

Exercise LXXXVII

1. He is not the man to return without effecting his object.
2. You were not worthy to be appointed a magistrate.
3. He was a fit person to deliver a speech on this subject.
4. She is not the woman to ask her husband for money.
5. Surely you are not the sort of man to betray your friends?
6. I was the only one to warn you that you were in danger.
7. This girl deserves to be severely punished.
8. We are not the men to listen to this foolish orator.
9. You are not a suitable person to teach the young.
10. He is not the man to promise to help us.

Exercise LXXXVIII

1. I am inclined to think I am not fit to write a book.
2. Your wife was not the sort to be deceived by the merchant.
3. This soldier is not worthy to be called a Roman citizen.
4. He is the only man who can prevent war.
5. This book is not worth reading, is it?
6. I am not the man to accept bribes.
7. There is no nation which can terrify the Roman people.
8. Do you think you deserve to receive a prize?
9. The boys were not the kind to fear the bull.
10. Is your friend fit to govern a province?

SECTION XXX

Characteristic
Generic
 "Quī" Consecutive (*continued*)

"Quī" Consecutive may be used after—

(1) Sunt, Erant.

E.g. Sunt quī hōc putent—

There are some who think so.

Erant quī rīdērent—There were some who laughed.

(2) Negative and Interrogative Clauses.

E.g. Nēmō est quī hōc sciat—

There is no one who knows this.

(3) Multī, Aliī, Nōn nullī, Quīdam (if the Relative indicates "such as to.")

E.g. Multī erant quī hōc dīcerent—

There were many to say this.

(4) Comparatives with quam. *E.g.*

Pulchrius erat templum quam quod dēlērētur—

The temple was too beautiful to be destroyed.

N.B.—When the Subordinate Clause is negative, and is governed by a negative or interrogative principal clause, "quīn" may take the place of quī . . . nōn.

E.g. Nēmō est quīn sciat—

There is no one who does not know.

(All the world knows.)

Exercise LXXXIX

1. There are some who have not paid their taxes.
2. Who is there who believes that you were at home yesterday?
3. There was no one who understood the message sent by the general.

4. Our men are too brave to retreat.
5. Who was so foolish as to open this door?
6. There was nothing for me to say to my father.
7. This burden is too heavy for the slave to carry.
8. We had no one to send to Caesar in the camp.
9. Those eggs of yours are too small to be given to the merchant.
10. There was no one who did not know why you bought the farm.

Exercise XC

1. There are some who wish to prevent us from drinking wine.
2. Who is there who does not admire a beautiful picture?
3. The veteran soldiers were too wary to fall into an ambush.
4. There is no one who does not praise your courage.
5. There are some who prefer to spend the winter in Africa.
6. My father was too old to enlist.
7. Was there no one who would confess he was wrong?
8. Have you anyone to send to the shop?
9. All the world knows what sort of a man he is.
10. What woman is there who can commit such crimes?

REVISION

Exercise XCI

1. There is no one who knows better than you who I am.
2. I shall send forward scouts to examine the nature of the ground.
3. He is not the man to send to the province.

4. To ^{W²}prevent the enemy advancing further, horsemen were sent through the valley.
5. You ought to try to learn, in order to help your mother.
6. Always obey the laws, that you may never be accused by anyone.
7. You cannot succeed without working.
8. She is not the woman to buy many clothes.
9. There were some who could not live in the hills.
10. You have been so idle that nothing has been done.

Exercise XCII

1. Let us not write many books, lest wise men blame us.
2. The boy is too honest to deceive his master.
3. All the world knows why the siege was abandoned.
4. He is human to the extent that he sometimes errs.
5. Why have envoys not been sent to demand hostages?
6. A man who does such things ought to be punished.
7. How many have come to Rome to see the games?
8. We set out with the intention of reaching the hills in the evening.
9. Surely he is not a fit person to teach the young?
10. We are so poor that we cannot buy bread.

Exercise XCIII

1. The animal was so small that I could not see it.
2. He closed all the windows to keep out the rain.
3. To avoid selling his estate, he is living in a smaller house.
4. The gates were guarded that no one might go out.
5. We are so happy that we are unwilling to return to the city.
6. There are some who say that the general is not dead.

7. That they might reach the fort more quickly, they marched all night.
8. Who is there who can remember everything?
9. Do you deserve to be elected praetor?
10. Come nearer, that you may hear the orator more easily.

Exercise XCIV

1. So quickly did he finish the task that he returned home before mid-day.
2. There is no one who does not hate you.
3. Two Roman knights were found to rid you of that anxiety (*abl.*).
4. You are the only man who can save us.
5. The marsh was so dangerous that we could not cross it without a guide.
6. I remained in the country, that no business might disturb me.
7. He was so foolish that he was always being cheated.
8. Do you think that I am so base as to desert you?
9. The wall was too high to be climbed without ladders.
10. There is nothing that can help us in this crisis.

Exercise XCV

1. There are so many (people) in the town that we cannot obtain food.
2. The old man toiled hard that his children might be rich.
3. The wind is so strong that the ships cannot leave the harbour.
4. We intend to be present in order to congratulate the victors.
5. The cold was so intense that we dared not go out of doors.

6. He has lied so often that no one is willing to trust him.
7. You are not the man to despise an enemy.
8. The trees are too beautiful to be cut down.
9. There are some who hope to see better times.
10. Do you think that the news is too bad to be true?

Exercise XCVI

The king of Persia resolved to subdue Ethiopia, and sent spies to examine the country. But the Ethiopian king captured those spies, and sent them away without harming them; he also gave them a bow which he bade them carry to their master. "It is so strong," he said, "that no one can bend it easily." When the spies returned, bearing this message, the Persian king was so angry that he set out immediately for Ethiopia. He had formed no plans, and he was soon compelled to retreat through lack of provisions. On his return to Persia, he caused his brother, who alone was able to bend the bow, to be put to death.

Exercise XCVII

Leaving the island, the Persians made for the mainland, and endeavoured to sail round Mount Athos. But a great storm arose, so that the ships could not hold their course and were driven on the shore. It is said that about three hundred ships were destroyed, and more than twenty thousand men. For there were in the sea monsters of all kinds, which seized and devoured the sailors. Others were dashed violently on to the rocks by the waves. Some who did not know (how) to swim were drowned, and others perished from cold.

SECTION XXXI

Verbs of Fearing

After a positive verb of Fearing (*timeō*, *metuō*, *vereor*), "that" or "lest" is translated by "*nē*"; "that not" or "lest not" is translated by "*ut*."

E.g. I fear that he has seen us—

Timeō nē nōs viderit.

I fear that he does not see us—

Timeō ut nōs videat.

If the verb of Fearing is negative, "that not" or "lest not" is translated by "*nē nōn*."

E.g. I do not fear that he does not see us—

Nōn timeō nē nōs nōn videat.

Note.—A phrase such as "*periculum est*"—there is a risk, "*metus est*"—there is a fear, is equivalent to a verb of Fearing.

E.g. There is a risk that he may see us—

Periculum est nē nōs videat.

SEQUENCE OF TENSES.—After verbs of Fearing, the Present Subjunctive (after a Primary Tense) and the Imperfect Subjunctive (after an Historic Tense) are used to express Future time.

E.g. I fear he is coming, or will come—

Timeō nē veniat.

I feared he was coming, or would come—

Timēbam nē venīret.

The Future Subjunctive is used only if the sense of likelihood is emphasised.

E.g. *Timeō nē ventūrus sit*—

I fear he is likely to come.

N.B.—As in English, verbs of Fearing may be followed by the Present Infinitive in Latin.

E.g. *Timeō venīre*—I am afraid to come.

Exercise XCVIII

1. Do not be afraid to speak the truth.
2. There was a risk that our men would be surrounded by the natives.
3. Did you fear that the strangers had been victorious in the games?
4. We were afraid that we should not be able to reach you in time.
5. Fearing* that the bridge had been broken, he hastened to the ford.
6. I am afraid that you are not likely to see her again.
7. There was a risk that several ships might be sunk.
8. He was afraid to write the letter on my authority.
9. Surely you are not afraid that I shall not be successful?
10. No one is afraid that you will not be able to finish the task.

* Fearing = veritus.

Exercise XCIX

1. I am afraid that he will not yield.
2. There was no danger of the snow melting.
3. Tell me why you fear to remain here.
4. We were greatly afraid that our supplies would fail.
5. He reads so many books that I fear he will injure his eyes.
6. Fearing the branch would break, he hurriedly climbed down.
7. I am afraid you are not likely to escape.
8. Do not be afraid to work hard, my children.
9. There was a great risk that the enemy would capture our messenger.
10. Surely you do not fear that I shall betray my friends?

SECTION XXXII

Verbs governing the Dative Case

Some common Verbs taking the Dative Case are:—

~~pareo- I favour~~

crēdō—I believe.

fīdō, cōnfīdō—I trust.

ignōscō—I forgive, pardon.

imperō—I order.

indulgeō—I indulge.

īrāscor—I get angry with.

invideō—I envy.

nūbō—I marry (said of a woman).

suādeō—I urge, persuādeō—I persuade, convince.

resistō—I resist.

subveniō, succurrō—I help.

noceō—I injure.

satis faciō—I satisfy, apologise to.

occurrō, obviam eō—I meet, go to meet.

placeō—I please.

obstō—I am in the way of.

parcō—I spare.

pāreō—I obey.

studeō—I pay attention to.

And the compounds of “sum,” except “absum”
and “possum.”

N.B.—Most of these verbs are Transitive in English, but Intransitive in Latin.

Exercise C

1. They persuaded me to forgive my brother.
2. I shall ask him why he did not spare the women and children.
3. He is not the man to be angry with his friends.
4. Ten years ago no one trusted me: to-day I am in command of the army.
5. The king was afraid that his daughter would marry a shepherd.
6. Envy no man: obey the laws: pardon your enemies.
7. It is said that you favoured the senate.
8. I requested my sons to pay attention to my words.
9. Yesterday I met your daughter in the garden.
10. He commanded the citizens not to go out of doors in the evening.

Exercise CI

1. I am afraid we cannot trust you.
2. The books you sent pleased me greatly.
3. They promised to spare all the unarmed.
4. Tell the woman not to indulge her children too much.
5. I am glad you do not envy your neighbours.
6. We were unwilling to obey the angry general.
7. They met the consul (as he was) returning to the camp.
8. The light was so bright that it hurt the boy's eyes.
9. She said she would never help them again.
10. There was no danger that they would not stand by us.

SECTION XXXIII

Verbs governing the Dative Case (*continued*)

Verbs which govern the Dative Case must be used impersonally in the Passive.

E.g. I was persuaded—

Persuāsum est mihi (*lit.* "it was persuaded to me").

The rich are envied—

Dīvitibus invidētur. (*it is envied to the rich*)

The battle was long and fierce—

Diū et ferōciter pūgnābātur (*lit.* "it was fought long and fiercely").

Concurritur—there is a rush (of a number of people).

Concursum est—there was a rush (of a number of people).

(They reached the city—)

Ad urbem perventum est. = *the city was reached*
(*it was come through to the city*)

Exercise CII

1. We were with difficulty persuaded that you had arrived.
2. The soldiers were resisted by the robbers for a long time.
3. The king is obeyed by all the citizens.
4. I think that the thieves will not be pardoned.
5. There was a rush to the middle of the city.
6. The recruits were commanded to return to the camp.
7. Are the rich favoured by the judges?

8. There was a long fight in the streets of the village.
9. In my consulship no one will be harmed.
10. You have lied so often that you are never believed.

Exercise CIII

1. On the news of the victory a shout was raised by the Gauls.
2. The top of the mountain was reached on the eighteenth day.
- 3. I am afraid you cannot be pardoned.
4. We don't know why these boys are favoured.
5. They will never be persuaded to drink wine.
6. I do not envy children who are spoiled.
7. At my suggestion the prisoners were all spared.
8. A prophet is never believed by his own countrymen.
9. Do you know why they were ordered to return?
10. The wealthy widow was persuaded not to marry the sailor.

Exercise CIV

In the same spring the praetors advanced from winter-quarters into Spain. Not far from the sea a skirmish arose between foragers. Help was sent from the camps, and gradually all the troops were led out to battle. Both the position and the kind of battle were in favour of the enemy to such an extent that the Roman army was soon routed and driven back to the camp. The praetors, fearing lest a sudden attack might be made on the camp, secretly withdrew their troops in the silence of next night. At dawn the Spaniards approached the rampart, and entering the abandoned camp, plundered it. Then they pursued the Romans so successfully that they killed about five thousand men. Thereafter they made for the river Tagus.

Exercise CV

The Athenians then returned to their deserted city enriched by the spoils which had been captured in the war, and at once began to rebuild the ruined buildings. One of their generals, Themistocles, urged them to construct longer walls at the same time, and the citizens eagerly undertook the task. Men, women and children all carried stones, and worked so hard that the walls soon reached a considerable height. The Spartans, however, fearing that the Athenians would become too powerful, sent an embassy to warn them to desist, but the Athenians, on the advice of Themistocles, detained the ambassadors. Meanwhile Themistocles himself had gone to Sparta and purposely wasted time. Finally a message came that the walls were completed, and the Spartans were forced to release Themistocles, in order that their own envoys might return safely.

SECTION XXXIV

Gerund

The Gerund corresponds to the English Verbal Noun ending in -ing.

NOMINATIVE.—The Nominative Case is supplied by the Present Infinitive.

E.g. Vidēre est crēdere—

Seeing is believing.

ACCUSATIVE.—(1) The Present Infinitive is used for the Direct Object.

E.g. natāre amō—

I like swimming.

(2) The **Accusative** of the **Gerund** is used mainly after the preposition "ad."

E.g. ad bene vivendum—
for living well.

GENITIVE.—The **Genitive Case** of the **Gerund** is used after (1) **nouns**, (2) certain **adjectives** such as, "**cupidus**"—desirous, "**studiōsus**"—devoted to.

E.g. ars docendī—the art of teaching.
studiōsus vēnandī—devoted to hunting.

N.B.—The **Genitive Case** of the **Gerund** is very common with "**causā**"—for the sake of.

E.g. audiendī causā—for the sake of hearing.

DATIVE.—The **Dative Case** of the **Gerund** is seldom used, being generally replaced by "ad" with the **Accusative**.

ABLATIVE.—The **Ablative Case** of the **Gerund** is used (1) to express means or instrument, (2) with **Prepositions**.

E.g. mēns alitur cōgitandō—
The mind is nourished by thinking.
in vēnandō tempus terit—
He wastes time in hunting.

N.B.—(1) The **Gerund** is modified by an **adverb**.

E.g. Milītēs fortiter pūgnandō hostēs arcuērunt — The
soldiers repulsed the enemy by fighting bravely.

(2) The **Gerund** can govern a case.

E.g. Cupidus sum parcendī hostibus—I am anxious to spare
the enemy.

(3) It is rare to find the **Gerund** governing an **Accusative Case**, except in the case of a **neuter pronoun** or **adjective**.

E.g. hōc faciendī causā—for the sake of doing this.
omnia laudandō—by praising everything.

Exercise CVI

1. Do we always learn by teaching?
2. This lake is not suitable for swimming.
3. Saying is always easier than doing.
4. We have come to the forest for the purpose of hunting.
5. By writing badly you waste time.
6. An opportunity of escaping was presented to the prisoners.
7. The consuls are debating about returning.
8. Are they not desirous of starting to-day?
9. I always think that persuading others is tedious.
10. With a view to spending the winter in the hills, he has bought a cottage.

Exercise CVII

1. What hope have we of learning how to swim?
2. Will you become rich by working hard?
3. There are some who are desirous of destroying everything.
4. Reading is very irksome to your son: he likes playing.
5. The farmer kept two bulls for ploughing.
6. Fabius, by delaying, restored the fortune of Rome.
7. Why don't you give me a chance of explaining this?
8. You will sometimes gain more by being silent than by speaking.
9. These dogs of yours are not suitable for hunting.
10. We were all desirous of returning as soon as possible.

SECTION XXXV

Gerundive

The **Gerundive** is a **Verbal Adjective** and, when used personally, must agree with its noun or pronoun, this use being restricted to verbs which govern the Accusative Case, *e.g.* **ad cēnam parandam**—in order to prepare dinner.

N.B.—If the object is a neuter pronoun or adjective, the Gerund is used in place of the Gerundive to avoid ambiguity.

E.g. **hōc faciendī causā**—for the sake of doing this.

Occasionally, for euphony, the Gerund is used, instead of the Gerundive with the Genitive plural of the 1st and 2nd Declensions.

E.g. **Rōmānōs videndī causā**
instead of **Rōmānōrum videndōrum causā**—
 For the sake of seeing the Romans.

But this use of the Gerund is by no means universal:

E.g. **tuōrum cōnsiliōrum reprimendōrum causā**
 (*Cic. Cat. i. 3, 7*)—
 for the purpose of checkmating your designs.

The Genitive **Singular** of the Gerundive is used with **suī, nostrī, vestrī**.

E.g. **suī excūsandī causā**—
 for the sake of excusing themselves.

With verbs which govern any case but the Accusative the Gerund must be used, and not the Gerundive.

E.g. **Satisfaciendī populō causā**—For the sake of satisfying the people.

Exercise CVIII

1. The bad boy is not desirous of seeing his father.
2. The task of repairing the bridge was completed this morning.
3. By listening to the orators you will learn much.
4. This place seems to be suitable for pitching a camp.
5. A new general was appointed for the purpose of finishing the war.
6. By neglecting this opportunity you have lost everything.
7. The boys have gone to the field for the purpose of exercising themselves.
8. Let us deliberate about granting the enemy a truce.
9. By banishing the kings the Romans saved their country.
10. This old man devotes himself to buying pictures.

Exercise CIX

1. He spent all his money in bribing the citizens.
2. Such an opportunity of educating your children will never be given you again.
3. He used to boast for the sake of winning praise.
4. She had no chance of admiring herself in the mirror.
5. The teacher discovered a new method of teaching his pupils.
6. Some men rule by praising the good, others by punishing the bad.
7. I do not like your habit of praising yourself.
8. Are you willing to die to save your country?
9. This is not a suitable time for planting trees.
10. We sent cavalry to ravage their territories.

SECTION XXXVI

The Gerundive expressing Obligation

The Gerundive is used to express duty, obligation, necessity.

E.g. **Bellum suscipiendum est**—

The war must be undertaken.

Bellum suscipiendum erat—

The war had to be undertaken.

Bellum suscipiendum erit—

The war will have to be undertaken.

The agent is expressed by the Dative Case.

E.g. **Carthāgō nōbīs est dēlenda**—

Carthage must be destroyed by us.

With verbs not governing the Accusative Case, the Gerundive is used impersonally in the sense of "duty," etc.

E.g. **Lēgibus pārendum est**—

The laws must be obeyed (*lit.* It must be obeyed to the laws.)

Note.—When the Gerundive governs the Dative Case, the agent must be expressed by *ā* or *ab* with the Ablative Case, to avoid ambiguity.

E.g. **Captīvīs ā nōbīs parcendum est**—

The prisoners must be spared by us.

N.B.—The Gerundive expressing "duty," etc. is *always* Passive.

E.g. "We must do this," becomes "This is to be done by us"—

Hōc nōbīs faciendum est.

The Gerundive is used in the Accusative Case after *dō*, I give; *cūrō*, *suscipiō*, I undertake; *locō*,

I contract; *condūcō*, I hire; *trādō*, I hand over; to express "action contemplated" or purpose.

E.g. Locāvit nāvēs aedificandās—

He contracted for the building of ships.

Urbem dīripiendam nōbīs trādīdit—

He handed over the city to us to plunder.

Exercise CX

1. We must return the money in three days.
2. We must return home at once.
3. When will they undertake to build a bridge over the river?
4. These boys will have to be sent to school.
5. Everything had to be done by Caesar at the same time.
6. The philosopher says that all must die.
7. He gave me the money to keep.
8. I asked who was to be blamed for this fault.
9. They must be persuaded to work harder.
10. I do not know who is seeing to the repairing of the boat.

Exercise CXI

1. You will have to walk five miles every day.
2. Everyone says that the women and children must be spared.
3. These flowers are to be sent to the merchant at Rome.
4. That friend of yours is not to be trusted.
5. They handed over the city of Corinth to the soldiers to plunder.
6. We shall have to help our allies at once.
7. The old man gave his sons to the philosopher to be educated.

8. You must not neglect this opportunity of learning Latin.
9. When Caesar was general, we all had to obey the officers.
10. We must collect sailors to see to the repairing of the ships.

Exercise CXII

1. In the reign of Numa, the laws had to be obeyed.
2. We shall have to return home in a few days.
3. I know that you must obey your father.
4. When will they undertake the building of the temple?
5. The poor are often to be envied.
6. I handed over the selling of the house to my son.
7. The boys have to believe the master.
8. I asked why the gates had to be closed before night.
9. The little girl must not go out of the garden without the knowledge of her mother.
10. Not being a soldier, you will have to stay in the town.

REVISION

Exercise CXIII

1. You live, not to put away your insolence, but to strengthen it.
2. There is a risk that the river may be too high for us to cross.
3. Let us resist the enemy as long as possible.
4. We ought to pay attention to the words of the wise.
5. Fierce fighting is going on in the streets.
6. Let us debate about making peace.
7. We had to persuade the old man to stay at home.

8. When will you undertake the building of the tower?
9. I like living near the sea.
10. By disregarding my advice, this farmer has lost his crops.

Exercise CXIV

1. I shall persuade them that the laws must be obeyed.
2. He gave me the work to be completed.
3. I am afraid you have returned unsuccessful.
4. The girl said that she would never marry me.
5. I hope all the captives will be spared.
6. Fearing to ask where he was, he hid in the cave till dawn.
7. In order to escape punishment, you dare to accuse me.
8. We shall have to trust our enemies.
9. The art of living well is not understood by everyone.
10. We are not desirous of seeing you again.

Exercise CXV

1. He is capable of ruling, is he not?
2. Thanks must be given to the immortal gods.
3. I was afraid that no one would believe us.
4. He was persuaded, on my advice, to read this book.
5. It is said that I stood in the way of the senate.
6. You will benefit your country more by living than by dying.
7. You will all have to work in order to succeed.
8. The king says that the traitors are not to be pardoned.
9. I am afraid that you yourself cannot see to the collecting of the taxes.
10. He came to our village for the purpose of buying land.

Exercise CXVI

1. It is well known that seeing is believing.
2. Do not fear that we shall not defeat the Gauls.
3. There is no one who can please everybody.
4. I am sorry that my son has not been of service to the Roman people.
5. There are some who cannot be believed.
6. An order was given that the soldiers should lay down their arms.
7. Were you not afraid the sailor would be angry with us?
8. Do you think this place is suitable for building a house?
9. For the sake of clearing yourselves, you have betrayed your allies.
10. No one feared that the camp would be taken.

Exercise CXVII

1. In the reign of Nero men were afraid to live.
2. The boys must bring all their books to-morrow.
3. Let us contract for the repairing of the boat.
4. We shall have to stay out of doors this morning.
5. Why do you fear that reinforcements will not be sent?
6. There is no risk that the money will not be restored.
7. The Germans were resisted bravely by our men.
8. Surely you do not think your son should be favoured?
9. I am unwilling to forgive you again: why do you not obey me?
10. We have assembled for the purpose of checking your designs.

Exercise CXVIII

The Romans thought that they would never be safe while Hannibal was alive. Accordingly they sent envoys to the king to tell him that he must surrender his guest. The king did not dare to refuse, but Hannibal, who knew what was going on, took refuge in a house, which had been given him by the king. It had been constructed in such a way that it had exits on every side. On the approach of the envoys, a boy, looking out from the door, told Hannibal that many armed men were in sight. The Carthaginian bade him go round all the doors of the building, and bring back word quickly whether it was invested on every side. When the boy reported that every way out was blocked, Hannibal realised that he must die, and so he took poison, which he always had with him.

Exercise CXIX

In the afternoon the Gauls reached the top of the hill from which the temple could be seen. Brennus deliberated for some time whether to attack immediately or to allow his wearied soldiers to rest for that night. Two of his officers, who had joined the army for the purpose of obtaining a share of the booty, proposed that there should be no delay. "The enemy," they said, "are still unprepared and terrified by our arrival. To-morrow they will regain their courage, and their reinforcements will be present to help them. The approaches which are now open will then be closed. Their gold and silver lies within our grasp now, but to-morrow they will be hidden. We must not lose such an opportunity."

SECTION XXXVII

Conditional Sentences

A Conditional Sentence consists of a Principal Clause and an "if" Clause (which generally comes first in Latin), introduced by "sī," if, or "nisi," if not, unless (which negatives a whole condition).

("If . . . not," where a single word is negated, is translated by sī nōn.)

MOOD.—The mood of the "if" Clause depends upon the mood of the Principal Clause.

(1) If the mood of the Principal Clause is Indicative (*i.e.* if the Principal Clause simply gives a direct statement of fact), or Imperative, then the mood of the "if" Clause is also Indicative.

E.g. Sī venit, gaudeō—If he is coming, I rejoice.

Sī vēnit, gāvīsus sum—If he came, I rejoiced.

Sī veniet }
Sī vēnerit } gaudebō—If he comes, I shall rejoice.

Note.—In the last two examples the English Present Tense refers to future time, and must be translated in Latin by the Future or Future Perfect Indicative.

Caution.—"Sī" is never Interrogative.

"Anyone" after "sī," or "nisi," is quis.

"Anything" after "sī," or "nisi," is quid.

Exercise CXX

1. If you are good to-morrow, we shall go to the sea.
2. If he sang in the streets, he was mad.
3. If he says that you cannot do this, do not believe him.
4. If anyone is willing to defend you, you will live.

5. If you avoid the dangers of war, you are a coward.
6. If the boy is neglecting his work, he will be punished.
7. Forgive me, if I seem to be sad.
8. Unless you help the State, you will never be forgiven.
9. If he follows us the whole day, what shall we do?
10. Can you tell me if your father is at home?

Exercise CXXI

1. Let them leave, if they are unwilling to work.
2. If we lose our money, how shall we buy food?
3. See that you let me know at once, if you find the dog.
4. If you go to the theatre, you will hear these songs.
5. If Caesar wished to become king, he was rightly put to death.
6. If anyone tries to deceive me, he will be sent outside.
7. Let them not remain longer, unless I bid them.
8. If you give anything to the poor, we shall all praise you.
9. If he said he could climb that mountain, he was telling a lie.
10. If he stands for the consulship, he will not be elected.

SECTION XXXVIII

Conditional Clauses (*continued*)

If the verb in the Principal Clause is Subjunctive, then the verb in the "if" Clause is also Subjunctive.

This type of Conditional Sentence can always be

recognised by the English words "should," "would" "should have" or "would have" in the Principal Clause.

(a) The Present Subjunctive refers to Future time.

E.g. *Sī veniat, gaudeam*—

If he were to come, I should be glad (in the future.)

(b) The Imperfect Subjunctive refers to Present time.

E.g. *Sī venīret, gaudērem*—

If he had been coming (now), I should be glad (now).

(c) The Pluperfect Subjunctive refers to Past time.

E.g. *Sī vēnisset, gāvīsus essem*—

If he had come, I should have been glad.

Notice also the combination of (c) and (b).

E.g. *Sī vēnisset, gaudērem*—

If he had come, I should be glad (now).

Exercise CXXII

1. If he were to start to-morrow, I should complain.
2. If you had informed us about the king's death, we should not have gone to the games.
3. If my children were not well, I should be grieved.
4. Had he not forgiven me, I should have returned to the army.
5. If we were in the valley, we should not see the cottage.
6. You would have been banished by the Roman people, if you had not defeated the Gauls.
7. If we were to work hard, this task would be very easy.

8. If I were consul, I should not be living in this small house.
9. If the shepherds had not run away, they would have been captured by the robbers.
10. If anyone were to ask you to send a guide, whom would you choose?

Exercise CXXIII

1. Had he stopped speaking, we should have gone away.
2. If you were to help me, I should easily undertake the building of the bridge.
3. She would have bought a new dress, had she not been very poor.
4. If you were to sing, no one would listen to you.
5. Had I known you were in Rome, I should have invited you to dinner.
6. If you had trusted me, you would not be suffering such things now.
7. They would have paid the taxes, if they could.
8. If he were to see you, he would throw you into prison.
9. Had she not given me food, I should have perished.
10. If you were to betray me, I should never pardon you.

SECTION XXXIX

"Whether . . . or"

A. "Whether . . . or," introducing Alternative Conditions, is *sive . . . sive*, or *seu . . . seu*.

These Particles connect Adverbial Clauses.

B. "Whether . . . or," introducing Alternative Indirect Questions, is *utrum . . . an*.

These Particles connect Noun Clauses.

C. "Either . . . or," introducing **Alternative Statements**, is *aut . . . aut*.

E.g. (a) **Sīve** labōras **sīve** lūdis, semper es ācer—

Whether you work **or** play, you are always keen.

Note.—In **Alternative Conditionals** the rules regarding **Mood** apply as in **Simple Conditionals**.

(b) **Utrum** labōrēs **an** lūdās, incertum est—

Whether you are working **or** playing is uncertain.

(c) **Aut** labōrās **aut** lūdis—

You are **either** working **or** playing.

Exercise CXXIV

1. Whether you believe me or not is not clear.
2. Whether you believe me or not, I shall leave in the morning.
3. He is either pretending to be ill, or he is afraid to come.
4. I cannot find out whether he is deceiving us or not.
5. We must summon a doctor, whether he is well or ill.
6. The fields must either be cultivated or given back to the owner.
7. Whether he were to read or write, he would waste time.
8. I cannot find out whether they are absent or present.
9. We shall go to the baths, whether you come with us or not.
10. Whether you did that or not, you are either a fool or a knave.

Exercise CXXV

1. This man is either guilty or a fool.
2. Whether the work has to be finished to-day or not is uncertain.
3. I do not know whether he envies us or not.
4. Whether you trust us or not, the story is true.
5. Let us ask whether the gates have been opened or not.
6. Whether the water is good or bad, we must drink it.
7. Either you or I will be elected consul to-morrow.
8. Whether I were speaking or being silent, I should not be believed.
9. I cannot find out whether he is afraid to fight or not.
10. I am going home at once, whether you wish to stay here or not.

Exercise CXXVI

"This is the only way of safety, Paulus, and your countrymen will render it more difficult for you than will the enemy. The people wish you to give battle to Hannibal as soon as possible, and finish the war at once. They will call you timid instead of cautious, and cowardly instead of brave: but you must resist them. Let a wise enemy fear you rather than foolish citizens praise you. I am not advising you to do nothing, but rather that reason should guide your plans. Be on your guard against offering the enemy a chance of victory, but see that you do not miss your own opportunities. If you follow my advice, we shall soon overcome the Carthaginians and free our harassed country."

Exercise CXXVII

Aristagoras took a branch of olive in his hand and hurried to the king's house where the guards, thinking he was a suppliant, led him to the king. The daughter of Cleomenes, a girl of eight or nine years of age, was standing beside her father, and Aristagoras, seeing her, asked the king to send her away. Cleomenes, however, told him to speak freely, and pay no attention to the girl. So Aristagoras began, "I shall give you ten talents," he said, "if you make war on the Persians." Cleomenes refused, and so he offered to pay more, but, at last, after he promised fifty talents, the little girl said, "Go away, father, and do not listen to the stranger. If you don't, he will bribe you without doubt." Then Cleomenes praised his daughter's wisdom and dismissed Aristagoras, who returned to Persia unsuccessful.

Exercise CXXVIII

There is a tribe of Indians, called the Padaei, who eat human flesh. This tribe is said to have the following customs. If one of them is ill, whether man or woman, they take the sick person and put him to death, to prevent his flesh wasting away in sickness. If the man protests that he is not ill at all, his friends will not listen to him: they kill him, and feast on his body. In the same way, if a woman is sick, the women who are her friends take her and do the like. If anyone reaches old age—which happens seldom, for usually they have been affected by illness before then, and have been put to death—they sacrifice him to the gods and then eat his flesh.

Exercise CXXIX

When Augustus was emperor, a senator named Rufus, once during dinner rashly prayed that Augustus might not return alive from Gaul. A faithful slave, who was present at the banquet, fearing that someone would report what his master had said in-his-cups (*ebrius*), roused Rufus at daybreak, and urged him to go himself and tell Augustus everything. So Rufus hastily dressed himself and went to the palace. When brought to the emperor, he asked him to forgive him, and, saying that he had been crazy the day before, begged the gods rather to punish him himself. "For my own sake," Augustus replied, "I shall take care not to become angry with you. For, if I were to kill you, the gods would then fulfil your former vow."

SECTION XL**Impersonal Verbs**

Impersonal Verbs are used only in the **Third Person Singular** of each Tense. Most Impersonal Verbs, however, require, to complete the sense—

- (1) A Neuter Pronoun;
- (2) A Simple Infinitive;
- (3) An Infinitive Clause;
- (4) A Subordinate Clause introduced by "*ut*."

E.g. *Hōc mihi placet*—This pleases me.

Cantāre nōn licet—Singing is not allowed.

Mē oportet ire—I ought to go (It behoves me to go).

Accidit ut adsit—He happens to be present,
or It happens that he is present.

A. Impersonal Verbs followed by "ut" with the Subjunctive.

Accidit—it happens; **ēvenit**—the result is; **con-tingit**—it happens; **restat**—it remains; **accēdit**—an additional fact is; **necesse est (ut)**—it is necessary; **fit**—it happens; **ex quō factum est ut**—the result of this was.

B. Impersonals followed by the Infinitive or Infinitive Clause.

Cōnstat (inter omnēs)—it is agreed (by all); **convenit**—it is agreed; **appāret**—it is evident; **mē decet**—it becomes me; **mē dēdecet**—it does not become me; **mihi libet**—it pleases me; **mihi placet**—it pleases me, I have decided; **mihi licet**—it is allowed me, I may; **mihi expedit**—it is convenient for me; **mē oportet**—I ought; **mē dēlectat**—it delights me; **pertinet ad mē, attinet ad mē**—it pertains to me, closely concerns me; **praestat**—it is better.

N.B.—As with the verb "dēbeō," I ought, **mē oportet ire** means, I ought to go; **mē oportuit ire** means, I ought to *have* gone.

Note carefully the Cases of the pronouns or nouns which accompany Impersonals.

Exercise CXXX

1. No one happened to see him.
2. It is expedient for me to reach the village as soon as possible.
3. It is agreed by all that you have spoken enough.
4. It was evident that the ship could not resist the storm.

5. I was not allowed to wait for you longer.
6. It used to be unseemly for women to buy expensive dresses.
7. You ought to help your country by paying your taxes quickly.
8. An additional fact is that we have no ships.
9. It was well known that he had sold his horses.
10. It is better to die than to betray our friends.

Exercise CXXXI

1. This matter does not pertain to the war.
2. It remained for me to address the senate.
3. It delighted me to learn that you were well.
4. The result was that they returned without accomplishing their object.
5. We happened to meet him yesterday.
6. It will please me to undertake the building of your house.
7. Is it suitable for you to come to the games to-day?
8. It will not become you to be angry with children.
9. She ought not to have married that man.
10. You may go if you return before dark.

SECTION XLI

Impersonal Verbs (*continued*)

The following Verbs are followed by the **Accusative** Case of the person who feels the emotion and the **Genitive** Case of the cause of the feeling, except when the cause is expressed by a neuter pronoun—

Mē miseret—It pities me: I pity.

Mē paenitet—It repents me: I repent.

Mē piget—It vexes me: I am vexed.

Mē pudet—It shames me: I am ashamed.

Mē taedet—It wearies me: I am weary.

E.g. Mē tuī pudēbit—I shall be ashamed of you.

Hōc (nom.) mē paenitet—I repent of this.

N.B.—A negative command with impersonal verbs must not be rendered by “*nōlī*.” The verb must be kept in the Third Person.

E.g. nē tē pudeat—do not be ashamed (*lit.* let it not shame you).

(1) “**Interest**”—it is of importance, takes the **Genitive** Case of the person interested, *e.g.* “*rēgis interest*”—it is of importance to the king. With personal pronouns the forms *meā*, *nostrā*, *tuā*, *vestrā* are used in the First and Second Persons. (This is the Ablative Singular Feminine of the Possessive Adjective.)

With Third Person Pronouns the form *suā* (for singular and plural) is used, when Reflexive. Otherwise the genitive of the pronoun “*is*,” “*ea*,” “*id*,” is used. The form “*suā*” can thus be used only in the Indirect, *e.g.* “*meā interest*”—it is of importance to me; “*eōrum interest*”—it is of importance to them; “*Putant suā interesse*”—they think it is of importance to them(selves).

(2) *Interest* may be modified by an adverb, *e.g.* *multum*, *māximē*, etc., or may be accompanied by a Genitive of value. See Section XLIV.

(3) *Interest* may be followed by the Infinitive, by a noun clause or by a subordinate clause introduced by "ut" with the subjunctive.

So also *rēfert*, which may have been originally *rē fert* (it bears to the advantage of). This would account for the Possessive Pronouns agreeing with *rē* and the Genitive depending on *rē*. *Interest*, later in introduction, followed the same construction. Note that *rēfert* is mainly poetical in the classical period.

Exercise CXXXII

1. Why are you not ashamed of your folly?
2. Do not pity those who are tired of life.
3. It does not matter much to me when you return.
4. Will the lazy boy ever be sorry for his idleness?
5. I am vexed to hear that you were blamed every day by your teacher.
6. It will be important to him to have read as many books as possible.
7. I hope you are not tired of this book.
8. Ask if it is important to him to see me at once.
9. If you do not pity the poor, you will not prosper.
10. We are afraid that it does not concern the farmer where we buy eggs.

Exercise CXXXIII

1. To whom does it matter whether I live or die?
2. I am ashamed of your stupidity, my son.
3. There is no one who is not weary of war.

4. Thinking it important that they should march at once, they struck camp.
5. It is to the interest of the State that children should learn how to read and write.
6. Tell me why you are weary of hunting.
7. If you had not been ashamed of yourself, I would have pitied you.
8. It was important to us that all should obey him.
9. I am afraid he has not repented of his cruelty.
10. The priest told the townsmen to pity the blind.

REVISION

Exercise CXXXIV

1. It remains for you to say you are sorry.
2. I don't know whether this pertains to us or not.
3. If the boys had been allowed, they would have played all day.
4. Why don't you write a book yourself, if you are tired of this?
5. Are you not ashamed to confess that you do not know that?
6. Ask him if he can give me a knife.
7. If he had had anything, he would not have asked for help.
8. They will deny that it is to their interest to bribe you.
9. No boy ought to be ashamed of his father.
10. This house happens to have been sold.

Exercise CXXXV

1. If the picture has to be sold, I promise to buy it.
2. Whether the horse is suitable or not, it is the only one we have.

3. It is very important to him to conceal his faults.
4. The children may go outside, if they do not play in the streets.
5. It remains for you to decide whether this becomes you or not.
6. I happened to see him stealing the apples.
7. It was not to our interest to declare war.
8. You ought not to have wasted time in hunting.
9. It is better to laugh than cry.
10. Unless it had been expedient for us, we would not have helped you.

Exercise CXXXVI

1. If it pleases you to hurt animals, you ought to be ashamed of yourself.
2. It will not be expedient for me to pay the taxes to-day.
3. Does it matter much to you whether I pitch camp here or not?
4. Unless you stop speaking at once, I shall send you home.
5. He is either very clever or very careful.
6. Unless the jury condemn the thieves, we shall have no hope of safety.
7. It usually happens that the rich are favoured.
8. What would you do, if I were to tell you that you are stupid?
9. If the harvest is ripe, you must hire more slaves.
10. They are either afraid to advance, or else they wish to make peace.

Exercise CXXXVII

1. If you were to despise my work, I should be very much annoyed.
2. The doctor could heal that wound, if you summoned him.
3. They are not allowed to slack in this school.
4. It is a pleasure to him to send his old clothes to the poor.
5. Tell me whether you pity me or not.
6. To whom does it matter whether we succeed or not?
7. If he asks for your sword, do not give it to him.
8. Had they spared the priest, we should all have rejoiced.
9. If this were of any importance to you, you would not delay.
10. The children happened to discover the robbers' hiding place.

Exercise CXXXVIII

1. How many pupils are ashamed of their laziness?
2. If I may say so, you are behaving very badly.
3. It was known to all that he died at the age of thirty.
4. Whether you despise money or not, you dare not throw it away.
5. It did not become you to tell lies about your wealth.
6. It was of great importance to the judge whether you were present or not.
7. An additional fact is that the times are changing.
8. My mother was vexed that we had disobeyed her.
9. Whether you are well or not, you ought not to despair.
10. I don't know whether this pleases me or not.

Exercise CXXXIX

1. If you remained at home yesterday, you were wise.
2. Unless we help them, the citadel will be taken.
3. Why were you sorry for those who did not repent?
4. It matters neither to me nor to them what happens.
5. Your mother would be grieved, if you were to tell a lie.
6. If the boy had not been weary of work, I should willingly have helped him.
7. Whether you are working or playing, you always seem to be happy.
8. If I had not gone to the games, I should not be ill to-day.
9. If anyone were to ask me to sing, I should refuse.
10. Be sure to invite him to dinner, if he comes to town.

Exercise CXL

1. Whether you are sorry for your fault or not, you do not deserve to be forgiven.
2. It was important for the general to find out the numbers of the enemy.
3. Unless you bring back the books to-morrow, you will be severely punished.
4. Do you think it is expedient for us to help our enemies?
5. He said it was not seemly for women to waste time in shops.
6. If I had realised what you were doing, I should not be here now.
7. The result of this was that no one would listen-to us.
8. He seems to be either very brave or very foolish.
9. Whether you stay at home or go to Athens is no concern of mine.
10. If my son were working hard, I should be glad.

Exercise CXLI

1. It remains for me to say a few words about myself.
2. If you do not pity the old men, you will be sorry some day.
3. We ought not to have remained so long in the sea.
4. It is evident that you have not learned to think.
5. An additional fact is that the money must be sent at once.
6. We happen to have used this boat often.
7. Had you been able to come, you would have seen the new car.
8. If my brother saw me now, he would laugh.
9. Whether is it better to sleep till mid-day, or to rise at dawn?
10. If anyone had warned me, I should not have tried to cross the marsh.

Exercise CXLII

1. It is to the interest of all to be of service to the State.
2. I do not know why you are tired of the country.
3. If we had been asked to trust him, we should have refused.
4. How did it come about that you were forbidden to enter the senate-house?
5. If we were to summon the officers, when would they be here?
6. Were I not ill, I should return with you to-day.
7. You may go, if you promise not to be idle again.
8. I am afraid that son of yours is not ashamed of himself.
9. It was of great importance to Cicero to hear the news as soon as possible.
10. The laws must be obeyed, whether you wish or not.

Exercise CXLIII

1. If the judge had pardoned us, surely you would have been glad?
2. The result of this was that the whole of the city was destroyed.
3. If we were to blame the farmer, no one would believe us.
4. Can you tell me if this road leads to the village?
5. If Hannibal had marched straight to Rome, he would have taken the city.
6. It pleases me to sit in the garden under a tree.
7. All were agreed that you ought not to have been blamed.
8. If Cato were present, he would say that Carthage must be destroyed.
9. Had I been so desirous of learning, I should have gone to the philosophers at Athens.
10. The risk is very great, whether we remain in the wood or attempt to cross the plain.

Exercise CXLIV

In the first sea fight the Athenians were defeated by the Syracusans and lost their camp. Later they were also defeated on land, and Demosthenes advised them to leave Sicily without further delay. "If you remain here," he said, "you will soon be in great straits; and, besides, a great war is threatening at home, for which you will have to preserve all your forces." But Nicias, whether he was ashamed of his lack of success, or whether he feared the anger of his country, refused to abandon the expedition. Accordingly the war by

sea was renewed, and the Athenians were hopeful of success, but owing to the rashness of their leaders, who attacked the Syracusans when favourably posted in a strait, they were easily overcome. Their general, Eurymedon, was the first to fall, fighting bravely, and thirty of his ships were captured and burned.

Exercise CXLV

Solon, the Athenian, came to Miletus, and dwelt with the philosopher Thales. Now Thales was a bachelor, and Solon asked him why he had not married. Thales did not reply then, but later devised the following plan with the help of a friend. He brought ~~his~~ friend home, and pretended that he had lately arrived from Athens. Thereupon Solon asked the stranger what was going on there, and the latter replied that the untimely death of a young man was distressing the citizens. "What was his name?" said Solon. "I don't remember," replied the stranger, "but they said he was the son of a famous philosopher." On Solon anxiously asking if he was the son of Solon, Thales laughed and said: "Now you see, Solon, why I prefer to remain a bachelor. Do not fear: the story is untrue."

Exercise CXLVI

On the next day the soldiers complained that the enemy were slipping through their hands, and that the war was being unnecessarily prolonged. They went to the centurions and begged them to tell Caesar that his men feared neither toil nor peril. "We are ready," they said; "we can and dare cross the river. You will never repent of letting us go in pursuit of the enemy."

Caesar, influenced by their enthusiasm and clamour, decided that he must make the experiment. So he left the weaker men to guard the camp; the rest of the army he led out lightly equipped, and, after placing a large number of baggage-animals in the river above and below, led across his troops. A few of these were carried away by the force of the current, but were rescued by the horsemen.

Exercise CXLVII

If Hannibal had marched on Rome after the battle of Cannae, he would have taken the city without difficulty, for he had destroyed the (only) army left to the Romans. At the time, however, he preferred to win over Capua. Five years later he led the finest troops he had to besiege Rome, and halted three miles from the city. The field on which his camp was pitched was sold by auction in the forum, and a certain person, not at all alarmed by the Carthaginian army, bought it. On hearing this Hannibal bade his officers sell the shops round the forum, which he regarded as worthless. Nevertheless he was so moved by the courage of the Roman people that he realised he had lost his opportunity, and withdrew from the city which had resisted him so bravely and so long.

SECTION XLII

Verbs governing the Genitive Case

I. Verbs of **Accusing, Acquitting, Condemning** and **Convicting** take the **Accusative** of the person and the **Genitive** of the crime or charge.

Accūsō, incūsō, īnsimulō—I accuse; **absolvō**—I acquit; **damnō, condemnō**—I condemn; **arguō**—I convict.

E.g. **Furtī accūsātus est**—He was accused of theft.

Tē capitis damnant—They condemn you to death (on a capital charge).

Caedis absolūtus est—He was acquitted of murder.

II. Verbs of **Remembering, Forgetting, and Pitying** are followed by the **Genitive** of persons, the **Genitive** or **Accusative** of things. Neuter pronouns are put in the **Accusative**, thus avoiding ambiguity.

Note.—"Recordor," I remember, takes the **Accusative** of things, and usually "dē" with the **Ablative** of persons.

miseror (1)—I pity, takes the **Accusative** Case.

misereor (2)—I pity, takes the **Genitive** Case.

mē miseret—I pity, takes the **Genitive** Case.

Exercise CXLVIII

1. The traitor was condemned to death by the judges.
2. If you are convicted of theft, no one will pity you.
3. Do you remember the years before the war?

4. I do not know why you forget your old friends.
5. My wife said she pitied the young man.
6. All the robbers must be condemned to death.
7. I was the first to accuse the praetor of covetousness.
8. Tell me how many lines you remember.
9. He said he had not been charged with bribery.
10. The old man was told by his daughter not to forget his own name.

Exercise CXLIX

1. The jury will not convict you of that crime.
2. Do not forget the injuries you received.
3. To avoid being blamed we must remember his precepts.
4. No one will be condemned to death without a trial.
5. The little girl remembered the names of the pretty flowers.
6. Do not forget that you are accusing me of theft.
7. The consul refused to pity the tired soldiers.
8. I had not forgotten the stories he told me.
9. Remember to ask your friends to come.
10. Your country charges you with parricide.

SECTION XLIII

Verbs governing the Ablative Case

I. An Ablative of Instrument follows the verbs *ūtor*—I use; *abūtor*—I abuse, use to the end; *fruor*—I enjoy; *fungor*—I perform; *vēscor*—I feed on;

potior—I gain possession of (also followed by the Genitive Case).

E.g. **Multīs librīs ūtimur**—We use many books.

Arce potitī sunt—They gained possession of the citadel.

II. Verbs denoting **Fullness, Plenty, Want, Separation**, are followed by the Ablative Case, expressing that which abounds or is lacking.

E.g. **abundō**—I am full of.

impleō—I fill.

careō—I lack (something desirable).

egeō, indigeō—I need, am in want of (something necessary).

liberō—I free from.

prīvō—I deprive of, rob of.

spoliō—I strip of.

vacō—I am free from.

fraudō—I cheat of.

dēsistō—I cease from.

mē abdicō—I resign (from).

E.g. **Nōs sex assibus fraudāvit**—He cheated us of sixpence.

Quandō cūrīs vacābis?—When will you be free from cares?

III. The phrase **opus est**—there is need, takes the Dative of the person who needs and the Ablative of the thing needed.

E.g. **Mihi pecūniā opus est**—I need money.

But the thing needed may be the subject.

E.g. **Equī nōbīs opus sunt**—We need horses.

Exercise CL

1. There were some who thought that Hannibal was not using his victory wisely.
2. The farmer has cheated us of two dozen eggs.
3. Do not use your books carelessly, my son.
4. I shall try to show that the accused is free from blame.
5. Man cannot live by bread alone.
6. I do not think you are performing your duty well.
7. He said that the Athenians had no need of ships.
8. These poor men need money and clothes.
9. In the tenth month he resigned the consulship.
10. I shall go to the country to enjoy the holidays.

Exercise CLI

1. I used to be on very intimate terms with your son.
2. If you are free from business, come with me to the games.
3. We were robbed of all our goods by the Gauls.
4. Tell your slave to fill my cup with wine.
5. The news of the victory freed us from the fear of death.
6. The general declared that the centurion had to be deprived of his sword.
7. If you accuse him of bribery, he will resign his office at once.
8. The neighbours complained that the street was swarming with dogs.
9. Surely you don't think he needs your help?
10. Why did they not use the weapons I sent?

SECTION XLIV

Price and Value

I. Indefinite Price or Value is expressed by the Genitive Case after "*aestimō*"—I value; "*faciō*"—I value; "*habeō*"—I value (estimate); "*interest*"—It is of importance. (*See* Section XLI.)

Expressions of Price and Value

"*Māgnī*"—at a great price, highly; "*plūris*"—at a greater price, more highly; "*plūrimī*"—at a very great price, most highly; "*parvī*"—at a small price, of little value; "*minōris*"—at a smaller price, at less value; "*minimī*"—at a very small price, of least value; "*tantī*"—at so much value; "*quantī?*"—at how much value? "*tantulī*"—at ever so little; "*floccī*"—at a straw (worthless); "*naucī*"—at a nut (trifle, worthless); "*nihilī*"—at nothing.

II. Definite Price is expressed by the Ablative Case.

Note.—With the verbs *emō*—I buy; *vēndō*—I sell, only the forms, *tantī*, *quantī*, *minōris*, *plūris* are to be used in the Genitive Case. Otherwise the Ablative Case is to be used with these verbs. *E.g.* *māgnō*, *plūrimō*, *parvō*, *tantulō*, *nihilō*.

Notice the phrases:—" *Est mihī tantī* "—It is worth my while; "*Victōria Hannibalī multō sanguine stetit* "—The victory cost Hannibal much blood (loss of life).

" *Operae pretium est* "—It is worth while.

Exercise CLII

1. When shall I be able to buy a dozen eggs for sixpence?
2. This house cost me four talents.
3. How much did you pay for that cloak?

4. I sold my farm for ten thousand sesterces.
5. This boy does not care a straw for work.
6. I value my garden so much that I am unwilling to sell it.
7. No general is esteemed more highly than Hannibal.
8. What did you give for these apples? Ninepence.
9. It was of great importance to me to sell the corn at the highest price.
10. You have cost me thirty thousand sesterces in one year, my son.

Exercise CLIII

1. I am afraid your advice is worth nothing.
2. The picture was valued so highly that I could not buy it.
3. For how much do you think he is selling the house?
4. Some merchants sell food at a cheaper rate than others.
5. The foolish woman paid a very great price for a dress which was worth little.
6. Surely you don't think the flowers are worth so much?
7. It was of very little importance to me whether you remained or not.
8. The apples were valued at fourpence, but we thought them too dear.
9. It is scarcely worth my while to sell the horse for five thousand sesterces.
10. They bought new furniture very cheaply in Rome.

REVISION

Exercise CLIV

1. After his daughter's death Cicero grew tired of life.
2. Remember the kindnesses you have received, and forget the injuries.
3. Why do you value your money more highly than your safety?
4. Is it worth my while to teach her Greek?
5. I enjoyed the wine you bought so cheaply.
6. It cost us a great deal of hard work to repair the boat.
7. Some people seem to care nothing for books.
8. These barbarians are said to feed on the flesh of their horses.
9. The jury refused to condemn to death the general who saved his country.
10. Gaining possession of the ball, he flung it into the sea.

Exercise CLV

1. Surely you don't think I need your advice?
2. Tell me why he did not resign office sooner.
3. The cruel woman deprived the poor dog of the bones.
4. The old man used to complain that he lacked friends.
5. If you fill my cup with wine, I shall gladly drink it.
6. I am tired urging these boys to perform their duty.
7. Don't forget to use your strength as much as possible.
8. We need horses to drag the waggon.
9. Will they sell the old furniture cheaply?
10. All the robbers have been deprived of their weapons at the suggestion of the magistrate.

Exercise CLVI

1. It is shameful to condemn this beautiful woman for murder.
2. The scouts reported that the house was full of smoke.
3. It is of the highest importance to Caesar to block the roads.
4. I am sorry for those who always lack occupation.
5. Remember the name of the boy who broke the table.
6. For how much will you sell the chariot you bought for ten thousand sesterces?
7. How often have I told you not to forget my birthday?
8. He was robbed of his clothes in the baths.
9. This country of ours seems never to be free from care.
10. It cost us twopence to be taken across the river.

Exercise CLVII

1. The rain prevented us from enjoying the holidays.
2. I don't care a straw whether you lie in the shade or in the sun.
3. I am so tired of quarrels that I shall resign.
4. You will be sorry you forgot this.
5. The judge asked the prisoner if he had ever been charged with theft before.
6. After the great war the fields were empty of farmers.
7. He swore he would never forget my face.
8. You ought to allow your dog to feed on grass.
9. I am afraid this merchant is selling his bread too dear.
10. If you deprive me of my liberty, I shall accuse you of injustice.

Exercise CLVIII

1. Let us never forget those friends who have helped us.
2. Why do they not desist from complaints?
3. The old man retired to the country to enjoy his leisure.
4. This little book cost the philosopher a large sum.
5. I fear that the merchant has cheated me of nine-pence.
6. Being charged with cowardice, he fled in the night.
7. Who said that we did not need wine?
8. Whether you remember me or not, I shall always be willing to help you.
9. In this street books can often be bought cheaply.
10. You are so foolish that I pity you.

Exercise CLIX

1. He is not the man to pity the poor.
2. The consul's son was accused of treason and condemned to death.
3. Does anyone think this house worth so much?
4. If you are wise, you will not resign the consulship.
5. For a long time now Antonius has been on very intimate terms with Caesar.
6. Let us ask why he was charged with murder.
7. Do you remember the house in which you were born?
8. It is worth your while to sell as many horses as possible.
9. How much ought I to pay for these pears?
10. I am inclined to think that they have forgotten their country.

Exercise CLX

1. I am afraid you will not be acquitted of bribery.
2. The farmer is so cruel that he has deprived us of our home.
3. It is clear that he is not doing his duty.
4. The table we are using was presented to my father by the king.
5. Let us always remember those (so) brave soldiers.
6. If you do not repent, you will some day be charged with many crimes.
7. After gaining possession of the camp, the general sent the Gauls under the yoke.
8. It was of great importance to us to sell all the eggs in one day.
9. I am sorry that you do not seem to care a straw for your masters.
10. When shall we be free from cares, my son?

Exercise CLXI

1. It is said that this lake was lately filled with fish.
2. I am sure that his songs are worth nothing.
3. If you do not work harder, I shall deprive you of all rewards.
4. Can anyone believe that this boy remembers nothing?
5. A sheep cannot be bought for sixpence.
6. He set a high value on his house, that no one might wish to buy it.
7. This estate cost me many thousands of sesterces.
8. What did he give for the doves? Threepence.

9. If I sell the cattle at a high price, I shall be glad.
10. I hope you will not forget that your friend is ill.

Exercise CLXII

In the evening we reached the city of lamps, which hangs in the air between two stars. On landing, we did not find any human beings, but only numerous lamps, which were running here and there, or loitering near the harbour. Some of them were small and poor, but a few were large and very bright. They all possess houses: they have names: and we heard them talking. They did us no harm, and invited us to dinner, but we were so afraid that no one ventured to eat anything or to sleep during that night.

Exercise CLXIII

Their magistrate sits all night in a building in the middle of the city, and summons every lamp by name. If any lamp does not answer at once, it is sentenced to death for treason. The magistrate orders his servants to kill the condemned lamps by extinguishing them. We were present at the court, and heard several lamps defend themselves, and explain why they had not arrived in time. Among these I found my own lamp, and learned from it what was going on at home in my absence.

Exercise CLXIV

Once the Carthaginians appeared off the coast of Sicily with a large fleet. The Sicilians, greatly alarmed, determined to ask Corinth for help, for they knew that

the Corinthians hated tyrants, and had waged many wars for the purpose of maintaining the freedom of Greece. Accordingly envoys were sent at once to Corinth, and after they explained the reason of their coming, the Corinthians promised to send help. Then they had to consider whom they ought to appoint commander of the expedition. Several notable citizens were proposed by the magistrates, but, to the general surprise, one of the common people moved that Timoleon be elected. This was done, and Timoleon showed such valour and skill that even his enemies were forced to admire him.

Exercise CLXV

It was now clear that the whole army was in the greatest peril. Cortez did not dare to remain longer where he was: for he knew that the Indians were not far away. "If they discover our position," he said to his officers, "we shall have no hope of escape." He resolved, therefore, to cross the river before dawn, and to travel with all speed to the village which he had seen from the hills the previous day. But the forest was so dense that the soldiers made their way with difficulty, and at mid-day they were still five miles from the village. Cortez, fearing that the Indians would soon be in sight, sent for two natives, who had been captured a few days before. "If you show us the shortest way to the village," he said to them, "I shall give you your liberty and great rewards."

SECTION XLV

Further uses of the Consecutive

Notice the following Impersonal phrases:—

- (1) “*tantum abesse ut . . . ut*”—

To be so far from . . . that.

Instead of . . . to do something else.

E.g. *Tantum abest ut timeam ut hīc manēre velim*—

Instead of being afraid, I am willing to remain here, *or* So far from being afraid, I am willing to remain here.

Note.—The same result may be reached by using “*adeō nōn . . . ut*,” which is a neater construction.

E.g. *adeō nōn timeō ut hīc manēre velim*—

Lit. to such an extent I do not fear, that . . .

or by “*nōn modō nōn . . . sed*.”

E.g. *Nōn modō nōn timeō sed hīc manēre volō*—

Lit. Not only do I not fear, but I wish to remain here.

- (2) “*in eō esse ut*”—to be on the point of (equivalent to the future participle).

E.g. *In eō est ut abeam*—I am on the point of going away.

- (3) “*fieri nōn potest ut*”—it is impossible that.

E.g. *Fieri nōn potest ut mortuus sit*—

It is impossible that he is dead.

Exercise CLXVI

1. I am so far from envying you that I am trying to help you.
2. Two hours ago we were on the point of starting for Sicily.
3. It was impossible for the soldiers to climb the wall.
4. So far were they from finishing the work that they had not begun.
5. I know that he is on the eve of resigning office.
6. Instead of blaming you, we wish to praise you.
7. It is impossible for me to see your friends to-day.
8. I am inclined to think he is on the point of weeping.
9. So far was he from sparing the prisoners that he ordered them to be killed at once.
10. Instead of addressing his troops, the general remained silent.

Exercise CLXVII

1. You are always playing instead of learning, my son.
2. So far am I from buying a house here that I hope to leave the town to-morrow.
3. I know they are on the point of returning home.
4. It is impossible for you to reach the river in one day.
5. Instead of repairing the walls, the citizens assembled in the forum.
6. I fear our friends are on the eve of surrender.
7. So far am I from praising this boy that I intend to punish him.
8. It was impossible for the sailors to defend the ship.
9. You ought to be working instead of singing in the streets.
10. The soldiers were so far from obeying the general that they refused to advance further.

SECTION XLVI

“Doubt”

Verbs and Expressions of Doubting, when Negative or Interrogative, are followed by *quīn* (that, or but that), and the Subjunctive Mood.

(*Vix*—scarcely, and *aegrē*—with difficulty, are equivalent to negatives).

E.g. *Nōn dubitō quīn librum lēgeris*—

I do not doubt that you have read the book.

Vix dubitārī potest quīn errēs—

It can scarcely be doubted that you are wrong.

Dubium nōn erat quīn hostēs adessent—

There was no doubt that the enemy were at hand.

Dubitāsne quīn victī sīmus?—

Do you doubt that we have been defeated?

Dubitō (negatived), when followed by the Infinitive, means “I do not hesitate,” “I do not scruple to.”

E.g. *Hōc facere nōn dubitō*—I do not hesitate to do this.

Exercise CLXVIII

1. Do not doubt that the ship is safe.
2. There is no doubt that he wrote many letters.
3. He said that he did not doubt that the long walls were very useful.
4. There was no doubt that the bridge had been broken down.

5. We do not hesitate to say that you have forgotten us.
6. I could not doubt that it was to our interest to trust him.
7. Let us not doubt that help will be sent to us.
8. It cannot be doubted that the Gauls were once in Rome.
9. Did you doubt that your father would give you money?
10. Why did you not hesitate to buy these eggs?

Exercise CLXIX

1. Can it be doubted that we wrote this book?
2. There is no doubt that he was on friendly terms with the enemy.
3. Does anyone doubt that we have repented of our laziness?
4. No one doubted that I had been present on the day before.
5. See that you do not hesitate to make a speech.
6. There was no doubt that he had committed that crime in his youth.
7. It can scarcely be doubted that he deserves to become rich.
8. There is no doubt that the sea is full of fish.
9. We did not doubt that the city had to be destroyed.
10. Why does he not hesitate to sell his house for so little?

SECTION XLVII

Expressions with "quīn"

Negative or Interrogative expressions followed by "quīn." (*aegrē, vix*—with difficulty, scarcely, are equivalent to negatives.)

fieri nōn potest quīn—it must be that.

facere nōn possum quīn—I cannot help.

nihil praetermittō quīn—I leave no stone unturned to.

diēs ferē nūllus est quīn—there is hardly a day but.

haud multum (minimum) abest quīn—to be within an ace, to be very near (always impersonal).

quid causae est quīn?—what reason is there against?

nūllum tempus intermittō quīn—I lose no time in.

For *quīn* = *quī nōn*, etc., see Section XXX.

quīn in direct questions means "why not?"

E.g. Quīn cōnscendimus equōs?—Why do we not mount our horses?

Exercise CLXX

1. I cannot help thinking you are a coward.
2. We were very nearly cut off by the tide.
3. It is impossible that you do not understand this.
4. We shall leave nothing undone to restore the exiles.
5. What reason is there against our restoring the kings?
6. I cannot help fearing that they have returned unsuccessful.
7. It must be that he is behaving badly.

8. What reason is there why we should not sometimes be tired of work?
9. I was within an ace of falling into the river.
10. They lost no time in sending envoys across the Rhine.

Exercise CLXXI

1. We came within a very little of winning the victory.
2. There was no one who did not admire her dress.
3. Hardly a day passes but he asks me for money.
4. They very nearly deprived us of the spoil.
5. The pupils could not help forgetting the lines.
6. It was scarcely possible for me not to envy you.
7. You must leave nothing undone to persuade your son.
8. They were not far from capturing the traitors.
9. He could not help selling his farm cheaply.
10. It must be that you told a lie yesterday.

Exercise CLXXII

Yesterday I met an old man, who told me a story about his dog, which clearly shows that dogs possess great intelligence. This old man was walking one day in winter along the bank of a river, and his dog was running here and there on the path. Suddenly it fell into the river where the banks were so steep that it could not get out again. It was on the point of perishing, but its master encouraged it by hand and voice to swim down stream to a place where the banks were low; and at length it climbed out safely. A few months later this dog was playing along with a puppy at the same spot, and the puppy fell into the water. The older dog, on seeing the puppy in difficulties, jumped in without delay, and guided his companion to the place where he had formerly escaped.

Exercise CLXXIII

Timotheus was now made commander of the fleet. He sailed along the coast, laid waste Laconia, and also defeated the Spartans by sea. Shortly afterwards he reduced Coreyra and many other important states. The Spartans then ceased fighting, and, of their own accord, yielded the sovereignty of the sea to the Athenians. Peace was granted to them on these terms, and the Athenians rejoiced so greatly at their victory that altars were erected to the goddess Peace. And further, that the remembrance of his glorious deeds might be preserved, they set up a statue to Timotheus in the market place in Athens at the expense of the State.

Exercise CLXXIV

Diviciacus, throwing himself at Caesar's (*dat.*) feet, begged him not to punish his brother severely. "I know," he said, "that your charges are true, and I myself am ashamed of his conduct. I helped him (when he was) young and powerless, for my influence was then supreme, both in my own State and throughout all Gaul. Now he uses the resources, which he owes to me, to weaken my authority, and even to destroy me. Nevertheless, I cannot forget that he is my brother, nor can I disregard the voice of the people. If you exact a severe penalty, everyone will think that you are acting on my advice, and the result of this will be that all the Gauls will say I have betrayed him."

Exercise CLXXV

The tribunes of the common people, incited by M. Cato, Scipio's personal enemy, demanded with great insistence in the senate that he should give an account

of the money of Antiochus and of the booty captured in the war. At this Scipio rose, and taking a document from the fold of his toga, said that in it was written an account of all the money and all the booty, and that he had brought it to the senate, that it might be read in public and deposited in the treasury. "But I shall not do that now," he said, "nor will I insult myself so deeply." And immediately, in presence of them all, he tore up the document with his own hands, indignant that an account of money taken in war should be required from the saviour of the State.

SECTION XLVIII

Verbs of Hindering, Delaying, Omitting, etc.

"Omittō"—I omit; "temperō"—I restrain; "prohibeō"—I prevent; "impediō"—I hinder; "dēterreō"—I deter; "recūsō"—I give a reason against, object.

(1) These verbs when negative may be followed by *quīn* with the Present or Imperfect Subjunctive.

But notice

A. *prohibeō*—I prevent, usually takes the simple Infinitive.

B. *vetō*—I forbid, always takes the simple Infinitive.

The English verb "refuse" is usually to be translated by

nōlō—I am unwilling, with the simple Infinitive, or by *negō*—I say no (or not).

(2) These verbs when positive are followed by *nē* or *quō minus*.

The commonest use of *quō minus* is after the impersonal phrase:—

Per mē (tē, etc.) **stat quō minus**—

It is owing to me (you) that . . . not.

or It is my (your, etc.) fault that . . . not.

E.g. **Per vōs stābat quō minus victōriam reportārēmus**—

It was due to you that we did not win the victory.

(Note that “stat” means “it-is-brought-to-a-halt.”)

Exercise CLXXVI

1. The sailors could not be deterred from burning the ships.
2. The king's son refused to obey his general.
3. I was prevented by the storm from reaching you on that day.
4. It was due to us that the taxes were not increased.
5. The girl hindered me from reading the book.
6. Ill-health kept me from coming to the games.
7. It was due to one man that the Gauls did not gain possession of the citadel.
8. He refused to prevent us from escaping.
9. He tried to deter me from buying so many books.
10. It was my fault that wine was not given to the young man.

Exercise CLXXVII

1. No one will oppose your using these books.
2. We could hardly keep the angry mob from killing the orator.
3. I shall not protest against your standing for the consulship.
4. It was due to your wife that I did not lack money.

5. We never tried to frighten them from crossing the river.
6. The horses were with difficulty restrained from running away.
7. Why did you say that you did not deter them from starting?
8. No one can hinder us from playing in this field.
9. You were the cause of his not being acquitted.
10. The fleet was prevented by the wind from entering the harbour.

SECTION XLIX

Verbs of Causing, Contriving, Affecting.

These Classes of Verbs are followed by “*ut*” with the Subjunctive: the negative is *nē* except where consequence is indicated.

E.g. *faciō, efficiō*—I effect, succeed in.

impetrō—I gain my request.

committō—I allow myself to, make the mistake of.

id agō—I make it my object, to do my utmost to.

cūrō, operam dō—I take care to, am intent upon.

nītor—I strive.

videō—I see to it.

permittō—I permit.

concēdō—I allow.

sequitur—it follows that (*neg. ut nōn*).

quī (adv.) *fit?*—How does it happen that? (*neg. ut nōn*).

necesse est—it is necessary (*ut* may be omitted).

Note.—“*sequitur*” and “*necesse est*” may also be followed by the Accusative and Infinitive.

Exercise CLXXVIII

1. He succeeded in catching the robbers.
2. The soldiers did their utmost to reach the trenches.
3. The children gained their request that they might be spared.
4. He will never make the mistake of choosing you.
5. I took care to praise my wife often.
6. How did you contrive not to be punished?
7. He effected the establishment of new laws.
8. It is necessary that all men should die.
9. I shall not allow you to forget your friends.
10. Beware lest you fall into an ambush.

Exercise CLXXIX

1. I shall always make it my object to show you a good example.
2. It follows that you must be condemned for theft.
3. They strove to free their country from slavery.
4. Let him see to it that he buys a new book.
5. I hope to bring about the repeal of the law.
6. He took care to be free from business during the holidays.
7. It remained for us to collect the bodies of the dead.
8. How does it happen that all the eggs have been broken?
9. When did they succeed in learning how to swim?
10. The master did not allow himself to be deceived by the lazy boys.

REVISION

Exercise CLXXX

1. Instead of expelling the traitors they have allowed them to remain in Italy.
2. You must strive hard to read the book within three days.
3. The enemy are without doubt on the point of retreating.
4. The woman gained her request to be sent home.
5. How does it happen that you are the only boy to deny this?
6. The storm caused the shepherds to take refuge in the cave.
7. It was impossible to reach the nearest town that night.
8. Why do you doubt that we shall be successful?
9. How often has he succeeded in winning a prize?
10. Do not omit to deliver this letter.

Exercise CLXXXI

1. Can you not keep this orator from speaking?
2. It is necessary for us to make wider roads.
3. I shall make it my object to obtain as many votes as possible.
4. So far were we from destroying the bird's eggs that we wished to protect them.
5. Instead of remembering our conversation, the careless boy has forgotten everything.
6. Take care not to break these (so) valuable cups.
7. Can you effect the capture of the lion?

8. There is no doubt that he was willing to stand for the consulship.
9. Our neighbours are on the point of complaining about your songs.
10. Surely they do not doubt that we shall return these books?

Exercise OLXXXII

1. They left no stone unturned to discover the ambush.
2. It was not your fault that we did not start in the morning.
3. Why do you stand in the way of my return?
4. It is impossible to find the bird's nest.
5. Does anyone doubt that he is a man of great courage?
6. Hardly a day passes but I am angry with you.
7. I cannot help regretting my stupidity.
8. We must prevent him from informing my father.
9. The dog lost no time in catching the stick.
10. There was no one who did not admire your statues.

Exercise CLXXXIII

1. The bull came very near to killing the troublesome children.
2. The adverse winds delayed the fleet from sailing for ten days.
3. What reason is there against our accepting these terms?
4. It must be that he was swimming down stream.
5. The guard tried to deter us from climbing the cliff.
6. The noise of the waves frightened me from entering the water.

7. It was due to Cicero that the conspirators did not destroy Rome.
8. The birds cannot help singing in the spring.
9. I shall never refuse to help a wounded man.
10. Do not doubt that men will be able to fly to the moon some day.

Exercise CLXXXIV

1. It was impossible to pity these ignorant women.
2. Everyone will be willing to speak on your behalf.
3. He did not hesitate to tell his wife where he had been.
4. They could give no reason against our convicting him.
5. The eager dogs could scarcely be restrained from biting the sheep.
6. Instead of thanking the cook, the soldiers forced him to eat the dinner.
7. It is impossible not to be frightened sometimes.
8. Why did you hesitate to tell the judge the truth?
9. Our allies are on the point of rebellion.
10. Did he make the mistake of confessing his crime?

SECTION L

"Without"

A common source of error is the translation of "without" followed by the English verbal noun ending in "-ing."

The Preposition "**sine**" (without) must never be

used in this connection. "Without" may be translated in the following ways:—

- A. By "quīn" and the subjunctive after an interrogative, negative or virtually negative, principal clause.

E.g. Eum numquam vīdī quīn rīdērem—
I never saw him without laughing.

- B. By "ita . . . ut nōn"—in such a way . . . as not to.

E.g. Ita imperat ut imperāre nōn videātur—
He rules without seeming to rule.

- C. By "nisi"—unless.

E.g. Numquam dīscēs, nisi labōrāveris—
You will never learn without working.

- D. By the Ablative Absolute.

E.g. Rē infectā abiit—
He went away without accomplishing his object.

- E. By "neque."

E.g. Cōnsēdit, neque ōrātiōnem habuit—
He sat down without making a speech.

Exercise CLXXXV

1. I never come to Rome without meeting you in a shop.
2. He works hard without being praised.
3. Can we acquit him without violating the laws?
4. Why do you stand without speaking?
5. The old man said that he had lived without harming the State.

6. It is impossible for him to be condemned to death without a trial.
7. I hope you will not do this without consulting your parents.
8. This foolish girl ran home without waiting for her brother.
9. I am sorry that I often see him without asking if he is well.
10. He never goes to town without losing his money.

Exercise CLXXXVI

1. You ought not to have left home without informing your mother.
2. He never let a day pass without writing to his wife.
3. The envoys hesitated to return to Rome without accomplishing their object.
4. We cannot teach without learning many things ourselves.
5. I wrote a few letters to him without receiving a reply.
6. You will not persuade us to go without going yourself.
7. He fought for four years without receiving a wound.
8. There is hardly a month but he writes a book.
9. You will never become rich without working hard.
10. We never saw him without admiring him greatly.

SECTION LI

Causal Clauses

Causal Clauses are introduced by "**quia, quod**"—because; "**quoniam**"—since; "**cum**"—since, as.

A clause which states the **actual reason or cause** has its verb in the **Indicative Mood**.

E.g. Miles necātus est quod prōditor erat—

The soldier was put to death because he (actually) was a traitor.

A clause which states the **unreal or alleged reason** has its verb in the **Subjunctive Mood**.

E.g. Miles necātus est quod prōditor esset—

The soldier was put to death because (as was alleged) he was a traitor.

Compare :—

Miles necātus est, nōn quod ignāvus esset, sed quia prōditor erat—

The soldier was put to death not because he was a coward, but because he was a traitor.

N.B.—"Cum"—"since" or "because," always takes the **Subjunctive Mood** whether the reason is actual or alleged.

E.g. Quae cum ita sint—since that is so—

Quae cum ita essent—since that was so—

Verbs of emotion such as **gaudeō**—I am glad; **doleō**—I am sorry; **culpō**—I blame; **laudō**—I praise; **irāscor**—I get angry; **mīror**—I am surprised, may be followed by a Causal Clause instead of the Accusative and Infinitive. See Section X.

Exercise CLXXXVII

1. I cannot believe you, because you often tell lies.
2. I do not like this woman, because she laughs too much.
3. I remained at home, not because I was afraid, but because I did not wish to go out.
4. He was banished from the city, because (as was said) he had been bribed by the king.
5. Since this was the case, I promised to come as quickly as possible.
6. He does not deserve to receive a reward, because he never works.
7. I shall not say more, not because I have finished my speech, but because no one is listening to me.
8. You ought to go to school, because you can neither read nor write.
9. I was glad that you had been asked to command the army.
10. The master is angry with me, because (as he says) I am very careless.

Exercise CLXXXVIII

1. We all thank you for helping us.
2. The soldiers complained, because (as they said), they had been deprived of the spoil.
3. As she cannot walk, she will have to be carried.
4. She married me, not because I was rich, but because I was handsome.
5. You must do this, because it is to the interest of all.
6. This pupil was absent yesterday, because (as he said) he was prevented from coming by the rain.
7. As we wished to start at once, we urged our friends to hurry.

8. He was surprised that you followed his example.
9. They were angry with us, not because we were silent, but because we spoke too long.
10. I am sorry the farmer did not sell the sheep more cheaply.

Exercise CLXXXIX

The soldiers, worn out by the long march through the desert, could scarcely endure the heat of the sun, and there was no doubt that men and horses would perish, unless they reached¹ water before night. Alexander, who was himself almost overcome with fatigue and thirst, nevertheless led his men on foot, in order to encourage them by his example. In despair, some of the light-armed troops left the column to search for water, and by chance discovered a shallow pool between two rocks. They carefully filled a helmet with the water, and brought it to the king. Alexander accepted their precious gift, and praised their diligence, but raising the helmet, he poured out the water in sight of all. Then, turning round, he began to advance again, without saying more. Thus he strengthened the courage of his men, and they completed their march in safety.

Exercise CXC

Not far from the temple there is also a lake which is full of holy fish of every kind. No one is permitted to harm them, and food is offered to them every day by the priests. Some of the fish are very big, and have names. When called by the priests, they approach the shore and feed out of their hands. The lake itself is very deep. I did not measure the depth, but they say it is six hundred feet deep. In the middle there

¹ *Pluperfect Subjunctive.*

is an altar which appears to be floating in the water, and hardly a day passes but many of the pious swim across to place garlands and gifts on this altar.

Exercise CXCI

Once Marcus Naevius, tribune of the common people, accused Scipio Africanus the elder, saying that he had received bribes from King Antiochus to make peace with him in the name of the Roman people on easy terms. The story goes that Scipio replied as follows: "I remember, fellow citizens, that this is the day on which I defeated Hannibal at Zama in a great battle. Let us not then be ungrateful to the gods, but let us leave this fellow and go to the temples to give thanks to Jupiter, best and greatest of the gods." So saying, he turned away and set out for the Capitol. The whole assembly, which had gathered to the trial, left the tribune and followed Scipio.

Exercise CXCII

The Greeks had prospered so well that Marseilles quickly became the wealthiest and most powerful city in that part of Gaul. The wealth of the strangers, however, excited the envy of the neighbouring tribes, and at the instigation of a certain Ligurian they formed a plan to overthrow the city. On a holiday several picked men were sent to Marseilles and, because they were known to the Greeks, were readily admitted. They concealed others in waggons and covered them with branches, and contrived to drive the waggons into the city. The rest of the soldiers lay hid in the hills, that they might fall upon the townsmen (when) overcome with wine and sleep. But a talkative woman was the cause

of the plot being unsuccessful. She happened to reveal their plans to a Greek youth, who promptly informed the magistrates. Thereupon soldiers were sent to drag the men from their hiding-place, and the rest of the enemy were themselves enticed into an ambush and utterly overwhelmed.

SECTION LII

Further Uses of the Genitive Case

(1) Some common Adjectives followed by the Genitive Case are:—

avidus —greedy for.	imperītus —unskilled in.
compos —in possession of.	inops —destitute.
cōnsciūs —conscious of.	īnsuētus —unaccustomed to.
cupidus —desirous of.	memor —mindful of.
dissimilis —unlike.	particeps —sharing in.
expers —without a share in.	perītus —skilled in.
īgnārus —ignorant of.	plēnus —full of.
immemor —unmindful of.	similis —like.
	studiōsus —devoted to.

N.B. *similis* usually takes a Genitive of the person, Genitive or Dative of the thing.

“probable” is always *vērī* (*gen.*) *simile*.

(2) Some Present Participles, such as “*amāns*” and “*patiēns*,” when used as adjectives, take the Genitive Case, *e.g.* *amāns patriae*—devoted to one’s country.

(3) The Genitive Case is used with the verb “to be” to express an attribute, characteristic, or duty.

E.g. *Sapientis est omnia patī*—It is the mark (or duty) of a philosopher to endure everything.

Exercise CXCI

1. There is no doubt he is capable of ruling men.
2. I cannot say you are devoted to books.
3. I asked if Catiline was implicated in the plot.
4. If you were unmindful of your friends, you would not be like your father.
5. It is impossible that you are ignorant of everything.
6. My wife is not accustomed to heat and dust.
7. You ought not to be devoid of ambition.
8. The Gauls are always eager for revolution.
9. It is sheer folly to believe that you are unskilled in the art of war.
10. He is not the man to be greedy for gain.

Exercise CXCV

1. Why are you always unmindful of the poor?
2. I do not doubt that these soldiers are devoted* patriots.
3. After the battle the river was full of dead bodies.
4. It is probable that many nobles shared in the conspiracy.
5. It is not like a wise man to be eager for praise.
6. These pupils are ignorant of the elements of Latin.
7. My soldiers are inured to heat and cold.
8. It is the mark of a small mind to envy others.
9. I shall be sparing with my money, but prodigal with my praise.
10. The youth was inexperienced in the manners of women.

* Use superlative of "patriotic."

SECTION LIII

Partitive Genitive

The Partitive Genitive is the Genitive of "the whole," of which part is considered. The part must be in the Nominative Case or Accusative Case (without a preposition). *E.g.* "**multī cīvium**"—many of the citizens. The Partitive Genitive may be used after nouns, pronouns, adjectives (mainly superlatives), adverbs and numerals, but note:—

(1) Only Adjectives of Quantity and Degree can be followed by the Partitive Genitive. *E.g.* "**quantum?**"—how much?; "**tantum**"—so much; "**plūs**"—more; "**quid?**"—what? (anything); "**nimis**"—too much; "**nihil**"—nothing; "**parum**"—too little; "**satis**"—enough; "**aliquid**"—some(thing).

(2) Only Neuter Adjectives of the Second Declension can be used in the Partitive Genitive. *E.g.* "**nihil bonī**"—nothing good; but "**nihil tūrpe**"—nothing disgraceful.

(3) Adverbs commonly followed by the Partitive Genitive are: "**ubi**"—where; "**quō?**"—whither?; "**eō**"—thither; "**tum**"—then; "**nūsquam**"—nowhere. *E.g.* "**ubi gentium?**"—where in the world?

(4) The Partitive Genitive must not be used after words like "**summus**"—top of, etc., as it is in English. *E.g.* "**ad summum collem pervēnimus**"—we reached the top of the hill.

(5) With Pronouns the Partitive Genitive is used only when the Genitive indicates a larger number than the word which governs it. Otherwise the words are in Apposition.

Notice the forms "**nostrum**" of *us*, and "**vestrum**," of *you*, are used as Partitive Genitives, not the

forms *nostrī* and *vestrī*. *E.g.* "*paucī nostrum*"—few of us; but "*nostrī obliviscitur*"—he forgets us; note "*nōs omnēs*"—all of us.

Note.—After words denoting number and after superlatives the prepositions *ē*, *ex*, *dē* with the Ablative or *inter* with the Accusative may be substituted for the Partitive Genitive.

E.g. "*multī ex incolīs*"—many of the inhabitants.

Exercise CXCV

1. If I see the farmer, I shall ask if he has any news.
2. Most of the children will return to school to-day.
3. I know that you have poured too much water into my cup.
4. He has reached such a pitch of insolence that he thinks he is a god.
5. Fifty of the hostages must be detained in the camp.
6. No one of you will venture to approach that house.
7. I am despised by you, because I have no money.
8. The best of the citizens will always obey the laws.
9. He is not the man to command the whole of the army.
10. All of us hope to receive some good from the State.

Exercise CXCVI

1. I am afraid you will hear nothing notable in Caesar's house.
2. Tell me how much money you gave to the beggar.
3. Nowhere in the world have I seen a better farm.
4. Who among you dared to say that I was ambitious?
5. The soldiers said they had seen too much slaughter in the former battle.

6. How many are there of you? There are fifteen of us, but only a few of us are here.
7. Of the boys the seventh was the first to reach the top of the hill.
8. Where in the world will you find a general like Caesar?
9. There is enough food in my house to satisfy twenty of you.
10. The old men spend more time in sleeping than in working.

SECTION LIV

Further Uses of the Dative Case

(1) Some common Adjectives followed by the Dative Case are :—

benignus —kind.	molestus —annoying, irksome.
difficilis —difficult.	necessarius —necessary.
facilis —easy.	obnoxius —liable to, exposed to.
gratus —pleasing.	pār —equal, a match for.
idoneus —suitable.	propior —nearer.
impar —unequal.	proximus —next, nearest.
infensus —hostile.	utilis —useful.
inutilis —useless.	

(2) **idoneus**, **necessarius** and **utilis** may also be followed by **ad** with the Accusative Case.

(3) Note the distinction between—

Est puerō liber—The boy has a book, where attention is drawn to the possession; and
Liber est puerī—The book is the boy's, where attention is drawn to the possessor.

Exercise CXCVII

1. It is very difficult for us to understand what is going on.
2. There is no doubt that you are often exposed to danger.
3. This task does not seem to be easy for you.
4. Why do you think that money is not necessary to us?
5. We read in Cicero that no one was equal to Pompey.
6. It is not easy for the ignorant to use difficult books.
7. Our new house will be very useful to all of us.
8. If you do this, you will be liable to the most severe punishment.
9. This garden is not suitable for planting apple trees.
10. The field which is next to the road I have sold for eight hundred sesterces.

Exercise CXCVIII

1. The orator had too much eloquence and too little wisdom.
2. I am afraid your advice is useless for the State.
3. Can anyone doubt that Fabius was a match for Hannibal?
4. This tribune cannot but be hostile to the consul.
5. I have two sons, of whom one is sitting next your friend.
6. I shall buy the horse, if its legs are pleasing to me.
7. A rich patron is sometimes very useful to a poor man.
8. Few of us can hope to be equal to our ancestors.
9. The cup, which was so pleasing to you, is mine.
10. A man who is liable to envy is not worthy to be made an officer.

SECTION LV

Dative Case (*continued*)

The **Predicative Dative** of nouns in the singular expresses a purpose or result, generally after “*esse*,” followed by a Dative of the person interested. These nouns can be qualified only by adjectives of quantity.

E.g. *Hōc mihī māgnō est impedimentō—*

This is a great hindrance to me.

auxiliō esse—to be a help.

bonō esse—to be an advantage.

cordī esse—to be to the liking.

decorī esse—to be an honour.

dēdecorī esse—to be a dishonour.

dētrimentō esse—to be a loss.

documentō esse—to be a proof.

dolōrī esse—to be a pain.

exemplō esse—to be an example.

impedimentō esse—to be a hindrance.

laudī esse—to be a glory.

lūdibriō esse—to be a laughing-stock.

odiō esse—to be hateful.

opprobriō esse—to be a reproach, dishonour.

periculō esse—to be a danger.

praesidiō esse—to be a protection.

salūtī esse—to be a means of safety.

usuī esse—to be of use.

Notice the phrases “*auxiliō mittere*,” “*proficīscī*,” “*venīre*”—to send, start, come to the help of.

vitiō vertere—to impute as a fault to.

dōnō dare—to give as a gift.

receptuī canere—to give the signal for retreat.

solvendō esse—to be solvent.

solvendō nōn esse—to be insolvent, bankrupt.

Exercise CXOIX

1. There is no doubt that many emperors were hateful to the Romans.
2. He left one legion as a protection for the camp.
3. This is a proof to me that you have been well taught.
4. I am afraid that too much wine is hurtful to you.
5. Surely you do not impute this to me as a fault?
6. It is said that your son is an anxiety to you.
7. You ought to have been an example to your children.
8. To be bankrupt is very often dishonourable.
9. It is always a great danger to break (one's) word.
10. He promised to send reinforcements to our assistance.

Exercise CC

1. This stupid maid is a great hindrance to my wife.
2. It will be a disgrace to you, if you allow yourself to be cheated.
3. The jury must decide to whom the crime was an advantage.
4. I refuse to be a laughing-stock to my enemies.
5. He sounded the retreat, because the weary soldiers could fight no longer.
6. Your boldness is a danger to the men who trust you.
7. These books happened to be of little use to us.
8. If he is allowed to speak, it will be painful to all of us.
9. Tell me why I am hated by all the pupils.
10. If the State is solvent, what reason is there to fear?

SECTION LVI

Further Uses of the Ablative Case

Some adjectives which are followed by the Ablative Case are :—

aliēnus—belonging to another, inconsistent with, foreign to (sometimes with “**ā, ab**”); also with Genitive.

contentus—content with.

dīgnus—worthy of.

frētus—relying on.

indīgnus—unworthy of.

liber—free from.

nātus—born of, descended from (sometimes with “**ex**”).

orbus—bereft of.

ortus—sprung from, descended from (sometimes with “**ā, ab**”).

plēnus—full of (more often with the Genitive Case).

praeditus—endowed with, possessed of.

vacuus—devoid of, without (sometimes with “**ā, ab**”).

E.g. **aliēnum dīgnitāte imperiī**—inconsistent with the dignity of the empire.

suppliciō dīgnus—worthy of, deserving, punishment.

humilī genere nātus—born of lowly stock.

vacuus mortis periculō—free from the danger of death.

Exercise CCI

1. Relying on the help of my friends, I bought the farm.
2. I hope you will never be unworthy of your office.
3. When shall we be free from anxiety?
4. I have to report that all the trenches are full of water.
5. (Though) possessed of small resources, he promised to help us.
6. I pity these children who are bereft of their parents.
7. Are you never content with your daily life?
8. (Though) born of humble parents, he became a very famous man.
9. There is no doubt that he was endowed with the highest ability.
10. I am certain that he is incapable of such treachery.

Exercise CCII

1. Relying on my father's advice, I resolved to prevent them from leaving the city.
2. We can hardly believe that you are descended from kings.
3. It was inconsistent with your high position to plot against the State.
4. Your house is full of beautiful pictures, but devoid of furniture.
5. This girl was bereft of her mother at the age of sixteen.
6. Cheating is foreign to the nature of my son.
7. I am afraid you have not always been worthy of your name.
8. If you are content with your lot, you will never envy others.

9. Being free from the fear of death, we ought to face danger bravely.
10. Sulla was ambitious and endowed with extraordinary ability.

SECTION LVII

Ablative of Respect, Manner, and Quality

A. The Ablative of Respect answers the question "in what respect?"

E.g. **nōmine** Iūlus—Iulus by name.
nātū minimus—least in birth, youngest.
alterō oculō captus—blind in *one* eye.
honōre indignus—unworthy (in respect) of honour.

B. **Manner** is expressed by the preposition "cum" with the Ablative Case, but "cum" is not required if the noun is qualified by an epithet.

E.g. **cum celeritāte**—with speed.
māgnā celeritāte or **māgnā cum celeritāte**—
 with great speed.

Note the following exceptions where **cum** is not used.

aequō animō—calmly, with equanimity.
cāsū—by chance.
cōnsiliō—by design.
iūre—rightly.
iniūriā—wrongly.
mōre—in the manner of.
modō—in the way of.
ōrdine—in order.
pace tuā—by your leave.
silentiō—in silence.
terrā marīque—by land and sea.
vī et armīs—by force of arms.

C. Quality. — The Ablative is used to express quality; an adjective is *always* necessary.

E.g. vir exiguō corpore—a man of small body.

(The Genitive of Quality may also be used.)

Exercise CCIII

1. A mountain of great height lies behind their camp.
2. He cried out in a loud voice that he would never forget us.
3. (Though) lame in the right foot this slave has walked twenty miles.
4. Have you seen a boy with black eyes?
5. I heard with great pain that you had been punished again.
6. Do you think that these boys are equal in strength?
7. Tell me whether this has happened designedly or by chance.
8. By entering the lion's cave he showed himself a man of the utmost daring.
9. (Though) blind of an eye, he seems to be the best of the scouts.
10. By your leave, I intend to carry out the work with care.

Exercise CCIV

1. I fear he is not a pupil of great ability.
2. In this way he persuaded the king to abandon the siege.
3. I am sending you a young man of great promise to be educated.
4. It is certain that he is crazy.
5. She is a woman of small build, but great enthusiasm.
6. A statue of great antiquity has been found at Corinth.

7. Nominally the merchant is rich, but in reality he is bankrupt.
8. The village must be taken by force of arms.
9. By your leave, I shall explain in a few words why I need money.
10. I am afraid the old man is very deaf in one ear.

SECTION LVIII

Ablative of Measure of Difference, Instrument,
and Cause

A. The Ablative of Measure of Difference is used in conjunction with Comparative Adjectives and Adverbs and with numerals.

E.g. multō māior—much bigger.

multīs partibus māior—many times bigger.

(For “quō . . . eō” see Correlatives, Section LXIII.)

When two persons or things are directly compared the Ablative Case is used (or *quam*, when the names of the two persons or things compared are in the same case).

The Ablative of Comparison is used and not *quam* with the Nominative or Accusative Case of the relative *quī*, *quae*, *quod*.

E.g. Catō, quō erat nēmō prūdentior—Cato, than whom no one was wiser.

1. Note: *amplius*—more, *plūs*—more, *minus*—less, and *longius*—longer, may be used without affecting the Case, *quam* being omitted.

E.g. Plūs ducentī periērunt — More than two hundred perished.

8. My garden is half the size of yours.
9. Do you know that this house is half as big again as Caesar's?
10. We all prefer to ride rather than to go on foot.

Exercise CCVI

1. It will be to your interest to live on milk and eggs for a few months.
2. He bought a much bigger house to please his wife.
3. Civil war, than which nothing is more cruel, must be avoided.
4. What will become of me (when I am) advanced in years?
5. The road must be made three feet wider here.
6. I rather think he has behaved a little better to-day.
7. Nero, a stranger to pity, did not hesitate to poison his own mother.
8. I am sorry the streets are rather crowded.
9. The Romans thought Fabius more cautious than bold.
10. Hannibal set out for Spain (when) not more than nine years old.

Exercise CCVII

1. I have lived over eighty years in the same house.
2. Worn out with suffering, they came at last to a land flowing with milk and honey.
3. This man is to be feared more by his friends than his enemies.
4. It is far easier to give good advice than to show a good example.
5. After the battle the recruits returned home laden with spoil.

6. Shortly afterwards he burned the book I was using.
7. More than twenty officers were deprived of their swords.
8. This route is three miles shorter than that.
9. He spent more than five years in learning Greek.
10. Your son is only half as big as his.

REVISION

Exercise CCVIII

1. It will be a great help to me, if you give me enough money.
2. Seven of us read the letter without understanding it.
3. Unmindful of my advice, he did not scruple to eat too much bread.
4. A man of small stature cannot reach the picture without standing on the table.
5. We purposely gave the signal to retreat without waiting for the general.
6. I am annoyed because you are a disgrace to your parents.
7. What will become of you, if you are bereft of your mother?
8. A pupil of outstanding ability ought to be devoted to literature.
9. The merchant killed himself, not because he was bankrupt, but because he was ill.
10. I hope the boy called Aulus will be an example to you all.

Exercise CCIX

1. It is probable that he had no share in that disaster.
2. The boy sitting next you deserves to be sent home.
3. The scout never let a day pass without helping others.

4. A boy who is subject to laziness is a nuisance.
5. The city we have come from is not more than three miles away.
6. Even Caesar was defeated, than whom no one is more skilled in the art of war.
7. Virgil, on the point of death, ordered the Aeneid to be burnt, because (he said) it was unfinished.
8. If the streets are full of water, I advise you to remain indoors.
9. He excelled most of us in courage and strength.
10. It is characteristic of a Scotsman to be patriotic.

Exercise CCX

1. Where in the world will you find his match in pleading lawsuits?
2. You must choose as a jury men of the highest integrity.
3. My daughter is devoted to music and endowed with a pleasing voice.
4. Let us buy a fierce dog as a protection for the timid women.
5. It is inconsistent with our loyalty towards our master to accept your plan.
6. Several of our pupils seem to work without making progress.
7. How much water do you need?
8. The oldest boy, relying on his speed, promised to deliver the letter before noon.
9. It is a great disadvantage to me to be lame in one foot.
10. It is customary to save the women and children first.

Exercise CCXI

1. She is annoyed because her feet are bigger than mine.
2. If you were a little bigger, you would be allowed to go.
3. They spared the traitor, because (he said) he could tell them about the plot.
4. Since you forbid me to go out, I shall be compelled to read a book.
5. Most women are very fond of beautiful flowers.
6. They could not be persuaded to come with us.
7. I rode to the nearest town to summon a doctor of exceptional ability.
8. There are some who think that no boy should work for more than two hours.
9. What reason have you to boast, because your son is taller than mine?
10. I am afraid they have spent more than half the money already.

Exercise CCXII

1. There is no doubt that this defeat is a disgrace to the Roman army.
2. You cannot continue to cheat your friends without being caught some day.
3. The great plain was devoid of trees, but abounded in crops of all kinds.
4. He blamed his wife for putting too much salt in the food.
5. Do not trust him, because he was implicated in the plot.
6. This woman is so inured to pain that she bears everything with equanimity.

7. If you are ignorant of the laws, you will become a laughing-stock.
8. We must resist them by force of arms, both by land and sea.
9. It happened by chance that a man of unusual strength was present.
10. The captives were thrown into prison, and died of hunger a few days later.

Exercise CCXIII

It was of the highest importance to the Romans to protect Casilinum, but the dictator Fabius, remembering the defeats which they had previously suffered, thought it the duty of a wise general to avoid a pitched battle, lest the Romans should again be routed. He did not, however, abandon the garrison altogether, but tried to send them supplies of food. For this purpose he filled many tubs with corn, and put them into the river by night, in the hope that they would be carried down stream into the town. But some of the tubs were driven to the bank where the enemy were stationed, and the trick was discovered. The besieged soon reached such straits that they were forced to eat hides and grass, and at length, worn out with suffering, they decided to accept Hannibal's terms.

Exercise CCXIV

Fabricius Luscinus was a man of great renown and notable achievements. Cornelius Rufinus was an experienced warrior and skilled in tactics, but was also given to stealing and greedy of gain. Fabricius did not like this man, nor did he treat him as a friend, but

despised him because of his disposition. Nevertheless, once consuls had to be elected at a time of crisis; Rufinus was a candidate, and his rivals were men of peace and not to be trusted. So Fabricius used all his resources to have the consulship given to Rufinus. Many of his friends were surprised that he wished a greedy man to be elected consul; his answer was, "I prefer to be robbed by a fellow citizen rather than to be sold by an enemy."

Exercise CCXV

I cannot help pitying your young men, Solon. In the presence of a vast crowd they are willing to suffer the most shameful things for the sake of an olive wreath. They wrestle, they strike, they throw each other* to the ground, and crush each other with all their strength. Then the victor with bloodstained face and bruised body joyfully receives the applause of the spectators and the longed-for prize. I am surprised that even men of the highest ability and wisdom waste time in looking at such a spectacle, nor do I understand what pleasure they receive. With us, if any one strikes a citizen with his fist, he is severely punished and fined by the magistrates.

* *aliū aliōs.*

Exercise CCXVI

How are these athletes, who learn to fight unarmed, of use to the State? It seems to me that a few light-armed troops could drive all these young men away. If I myself should draw this sword and fall upon them, I should capture the city by a mere shout, for they would all take to flight and hide behind your statues, and no one would dare to face the danger first. Away

with the dust and the oil! Teach them to hurl the spear, but do not give them light javelins which can be deflected by the wind, but a heavy lance, a heavy stone, a breastplate and a shield.

SECTION LIX

Temporal Clauses: "Cum"

CAUTION: In Temporal Clauses the tenses in English are often used loosely, but Latin is much more exact, and (with the exception of the Present Indicative after *antequam*—before) never uses the Present Indicative where the Future or Future Perfect is grammatically necessary.

E.g. When you come, you will see him—

Cum vēneris, eum vidēbis (i.e., when you will have come, etc.).

A. *Cum*, when denoting nothing but "time when," takes the Indicative, Present or Future Tense.

E.g. Cum tacent, clāmant—

When they are silent, they cry aloud.

Cum, denoting "time when" only, is rare in past time, and only when the time of the *Cum* Clause coincides exactly with the time of the Principal Clause. In these circumstances *tum* is often found in the Principal Clause.

E.g. Cum Rōmae egō eram, tum tū Athēnīs erās—

When I was at Rome, you were at Athens.

B. *Cum*, meaning "after," "since," "as" (frequently taking the place of a Participle), or "although," invariably takes the Subjunctive.

when verb in cum clause is Primary use Indicative
Historia Subjunctive
Imp. & Plup.

E.g. **Cum** timeās, hīc manē—

Since you are afraid, stay here.

Cum versūs didicissem, praemium accēpī—

After (when) I had learned the lines, I received a prize.

Cum cōnsilium tuum probārem, nihil prōficiēbam—

Although I approved of your plan, I made no progress.

C. **Cum**, meaning “when,” in the sense of “whenever,” “as often as,” is followed by the **Perfect** (sometimes **Present**) **Indicative**, if the **Principal Verb** is **Primary**, and by the **Pluperfect Indicative** if the **Principal Verb** is **Historic**.

E.g. **Cum** Rōmānī impetum fēcērunt, hostēs fugiunt—

Whenever the Romans make an attack, the enemy flee.

Cum Rōmānī impetum fēcērant, hostēs fugiēbant—

Whenever the Romans made an attack, the enemy used to flee.

D. When the **Cum** Clause contains what is, in effect, the principal statement of the sentence, **cum** is followed by the **Indicative**.

E.g. Iam hōc facere parābant, cum mātres prō-(cu) currērunt—

They were now preparing to do this, when the mothers ran forward.

N.B.—Be careful to distinguish “**cum**” and “**quandō**”: **quandō** introduces a **Direct** or **Indirect Question**; **cum** never does so.

Exercise CCXVII

1. When they reached the river, they could not find a ford.
2. Since this is the case, you may now read the letter.
3. Scarcely had the ships left the harbour when the enemy's fleet came into sight.
4. When you see the consul, ask what happened in the senate yesterday.
5. It is no business of ours when you reached home.
6. Though we hoped to be able to come, we were prevented by illness.
7. I was running into the garden, when I was struck by a stone.
8. Although he was endowed with great talents, he was hated by all for his cruelty.
9. Having climbed the mountain, he planted a flag on the summit.
10. When your father finds out where you have been, you will be sorry.

Exercise CCXVIII

1. The little girl was crossing the bridge, when she fell into the river.
2. Whenever he worked hard, he was happy.
3. When the old man was pretending to be reading, he was really asleep.
4. When you were shouting in the forum, all your friends were silent.
5. When I returned, I found two dogs in my garden.
6. Whenever I see a beggar, I ask my friend to give him a penny.
7. When I entered the city, I found no one to greet me.

- ✓8. After dining well, they began to dance.
- ✓9. When we are tired of the town, we shall move to the seaside.
- ✓10. The consul was ploughing his fields when the messenger arrived.

Exercise CCXIX

- ✓1. Since you are unwilling to help me, I shall never forgive you.
- 2. Whenever he was free from business, his friends took him to the hills.
- 3. I meet that man whenever I ride to the next village.
- ✓4. When you return, you will find everything changed.
- 5. After seeing the farm, he promised to buy it for forty talents.
- 6. Although you are unworthy of my help, I shall try to come.
- 7. Tell me when you intend to pay back the money.
- 8. Whenever you go to the theatre, you see a good play.
- 9. I was sitting in the garden, when the shout arose.
- 10. When you give money to the poor, do not inform everybody.

SECTION LX

Temporal Clauses (*continued*). "Dum."

A. 1. "Dum"—while, as long as, during the time that, and "quam diū"—while, as long as, may take any Tense of the Indicative. Both Clauses denote the same period of time.

E.g. Dum vivō, spērō—While I live, I hope.

At some point of time during . . .

2. "Dum"—while. When the "while" clause indicates a period of time longer than that indicated by the Principal Clause, the Present Indicative is used with "Dum," even in past time.

E.g. Dum haec geruntur, dux subitō advēnīt—

While this was going on, the leader suddenly arrived.

3. "Dum," "Dum modō"—while = provided that, if only, always takes the Subjunctive. The Negative is *nē*.

E.g. Māgnō mē metū liberābis, dum modō inter mē atque tē mūrus intersit—

You will free me from great fear, provided there is a wall between me and you.

B. 1. "Dum," "Quoad," "Dōnec"—until, referring simply to time, are followed by the Indicative, mainly the Present or Perfect.

E.g. Dōnec rediit Marcellus, silentium fuit—

There was silence, till Marcellus returned.

2. "Dum," "Quoad," "Dōnec"—until, indicating "expectation" or "design" are followed by the Subjunctive Mood.

If the "until" clause is future the verb is, as a rule, in the Subjunctive Mood, because the idea of design or expectation is implied.

E.g. Maneāmus dum Caesar redeat—

Let us wait till Caesar returns.

Dum reliquae nāvēs eō convenīrent expectāvit—

He waited till the rest of the ships should arrive.

Exercise CCXX

1. While you are silent, I shall try to sleep.
2. Remain in the house till I find your father.
3. The dog always searched diligently till he found the bones.
4. While this was going on, there was a sudden rush by the soldiers.
5. While you were wasting time in Athens, I was studying literature at Rome.
6. Nothing can be done till we get some money.
7. If only you do not resist Caesar, all of you will be spared.
8. While we were sitting there, the ground was very damp.
9. You must not go away till you get permission.
10. While my friend was still talking, I fled.

Exercise CCXXI

1. As long as there is water in the spring, we must remain here.
2. Provided that you do not make a speech, I shall take you to the assembly.
3. Do not injure these trees while the farmer is in sight.
4. He remained in the country until the consuls were elected.
5. As long as the tyrant was alive, no one enjoyed leisure.
6. You may play as long as you behave well.
7. I shall forgive you, provided that you repent.
8. While I lived in London, I used often to go to the theatre.

9. As long as you refuse to obey, we shall prevent you from leaving.
10. While the old man was sleeping, the little girl ran away.

Exercise CCXXII

1. Provided you do not linger in the water, I shall allow you to swim.
2. As long as the good queen was ruling, we never lacked food.
3. While the farmer ploughs, his wife prepares the dinner.
4. We shall not do this until we are compelled.
5. While this teacher is present, no one dares to move.
6. As long as you don't try to cheat me, I shall play with you.
7. While they were wasting their time in hunting, the enemy captured the hill.
8. They waited until the general gave the signal to retreat.
9. While the judge was speaking, the prisoner could scarcely refrain from tears.
10. As long as you are well, I shall be content with my lot.

SECTION LXI

Temporal Clauses (*continued*): "Post quam," etc.

Post quam, Postea quam—after.

Ante quam, Prius quam—before. Note the ante . . . quam and prius . . . quam are often separated.

E.g. Neque prius fugere destitērunt quam ad flūmen pervēnērunt. They did not stop their flight till they reached the river.

Simul ac (atque)—as soon as; *ut primum*, *ubi primum*—as soon as; *ut*, *ubi*—when.

A. All these Temporal Conjunctions take the Indicative when nothing else but "time" is indicated.

Note.—(1) "*Post quam*," "*Ante quam*" when the Principal Clause is Positive usually take the Present Indicative after Present Sequence, and the Perfect Indicative after Historic Sequence.

E.g. *Ante quam ad sententiam redeō, dē mē pauca dīcam*—
Before I return to my subject, I shall say a few words
about myself.

(2) After "*Post quam*" the English Pluperfect tense is rendered by the Perfect Tense in Latin, unless a definite interval of time is mentioned.

E.g. *Post quam amici abiērunt, domum rediī*—After my
friends had gone, I returned home.

Nōnō annō post quam in Hispaniam vēnerat, occīsus est—He was killed in the ninth year after he had
come to Spain.

B. When the idea of design or ^{foretelling} prevention is present, *prius quam* and *ante quam* are followed by the Subjunctive Mood.

E.g. *Prius quam hōc circulō excēdās, redde respōnsum*—

Before you leave this circle, give me an answer.

Exercise CCXXIII

1. After we had seen all the beautiful buildings, we returned to the inn.
2. He was killed ten days after he reached Gaul.
3. As long as there is deep snow on the hills, we cannot move.
4. I was unwilling to go away before seeing him.

5. Do not ask* your mother for money before I return.
6. After trying in vain to teach this girl, I sent her home.
7. Before I could catch the robber, he escaped into the caves.
8. We shall not be able to return the money before you set out.
9. As soon as the king had left the palace, the citizens raised a shout.
10. The city (of) Troy was captured in the tenth year after the Greeks had crossed the sea.

* *Double Accusative.*

Exercise CCXXIV

1. As long as the sun shines, the old man sits in his garden.
2. After I had sold the farm, I lived for a few months in the village.
3. Caesar wished to capture the bridge before the enemy could reach the river.
4. After reading the teacher's letter, I sent for my son.
5. Let us not blame this man before we know what he has done.
6. You will learn, my son, as long as you wish to learn.
7. As soon as the scout saw that he was surrounded, he surrendered.
8. Before the gates were opened, we walked through the streets of the town.
9. The farmer refuses to pay the money which he owes, before he has sold his crops.
10. The crowd did not go away until the king appeared.

Exercise CCXXV

1. He was arrested on the fourth day after he had committed the crime.
2. As soon as you arrived, he sent a slave to buy more wine.
3. Before he set out, he embraced his mother.
4. Why do you always come home before dinner is ready?
5. You must wait for the signal before you begin to sing.
6. Before he could turn, I struck him with my fists.
7. As he was leaving the senate-house, he met his friend.
8. Do not set sail before the reinforcements arrive.
9. They returned unsuccessful, three months after setting out.
10. You may go, as soon as you finish your work.

REVISION**Exercise CCXXVI**

1. When I heard you speak, I began to despair.
2. While you are living in the country, learn the names of the trees.
3. Whenever he sees his friend laughing, he also laughs.
4. As long as you are successful, you will have few enemies.
5. Horatius resisted the enemy's attack until his comrades could break the bridge.
6. Think well before you answer.
7. When you have decided to act, act with the greatest speed.
8. The cowards did not stop running until they reached safety.

9. As soon as the besieged saw our standards, they raised a shout.
10. The wise man will hesitate to avenge himself until he is free from anger.

Exercise CCXXVII

1. After drinking the wine he felt that he would succeed.
2. While he was hiding in the cave, he discovered who were involved in the plot.
3. Since you are so forgetful, you must write these lines.
4. Tell us when you intend to return from London.
5. As long as you are intimate with this man, you will be hated by the townsmen.
6. The garrison was on the point of starvation, when the reinforcements came in sight.
7. Whenever you meet him, beware lest he try to borrow money.
8. Provided you do not become a nuisance to others, you may sing as long as you wish.
9. I shall not cease to resist them until they restore the hostages.
10. Before the angry bull could move, the farmer killed it with one blow.

Exercise CCXXVIII

1. After the water receded, we found his body on the bank.
2. Before the senator had finished his speech, we persuaded him to sit down.
3. Ten hours after the fleet left port, a storm arose and destroyed many ships.

4. Since you hesitate to follow my example, I shall never help you again.
5. After crossing the bridge you must travel by the road which leads to Rome.
6. The tribes of Gaul revolted while Caesar was absent.
7. As soon as you receive this letter, sell your possessions.
8. The citizens were forbidden to go out at night while the elections were being held.
9. Provided you give me enough troops, we shall finish the war without opposition.
10. As often as she goes to town, she spends her time in the shops.

Exercise CCXXIX

1. While you were sleeping last night, I was looking at the stars.
2. If only he can be trusted, he will be of great service to us.
3. Whenever he meets me, he asks me the time.
4. Before pitching camp, see that the place is suitable.
5. As soon as this task is finished, I shall enjoy leisure.
6. After climbing to the top of the wall, he urged the bystanders to lay down their arms.
7. Before he became king, he was devoted to hunting.
8. No one ~~must~~^{will} leave the camp till I give the signal.
9. No sooner had the message^{wa} reached us than we resolved to return.
10. While our men were trying to enter the house, the thief escaped through the window.

Exercise CCXXX

After the battle of Marathon, Themistocles warned the Athenians that their victory would not end the war, but would be the cause of a greater one. Accordingly they had built two hundred ships to protect themselves. When, at the approach of Xerxes, the Athenians consulted the oracle at Delphi, this answer was given: "With wooden walls ye must provide for your safety." Thinking that defence by the ships was meant, Themistocles persuaded them all that the citizens, not the walls, constituted a country; and that it would be better for them to trust themselves to their ships rather than to their city. His advice was approved, and they sent their wives and children and most valuable possessions to a distant island: they themselves took up arms and embarked on the ships.

Exercise CCXXXI

Once the elder Scipio was besieging a town in Spain which was so strongly fortified both by nature and art that there seemed to be no prospect of capturing it. One day, while he was holding a court in the camp, from which the town could easily be seen, the soldiers who were being tried before him asked on what day and in what place he bade them bring bail. Then Scipio, pointing with his hand at the citadel of the town they were besieging, said, "Be present in three days at that spot." And so it happened: on the third day, on which he had ordered them to be present, the town was taken, and on that same day he held a court in the citadel.

Exercise CCXXXII

When Antiochus, the King of Syria, was besieging the Egyptians at Alexandria, envoys were sent to him by the senate to order him not to make war on an ally of the Roman people. Antiochus received the envoys kindly, and held out his right hand to Popilius, their leader, but Popilius commanded him to read the senate's letter first. After reading the letter, Antiochus said that he would consider afterwards what was to be done. Then Popilius, drawing a circle round the king with the rod which he held in his hand, said: "Before you leave this circle, give me an answer to take back to the senate." Antiochus was so astonished that he promised to obey the senate. Then only did Popilius give his right hand to the king, as to an ally and friend.

Exercise CCXXXIII

Croesus had a son, as I have mentioned before, who was in every way a most excellent youth, but he was deaf and dumb. While he was prosperous, Croesus had done everything to cure him but in vain. Now, after the capture of Sardis, one of the Persians was on the point of killing Croesus, not knowing who he was. Croesus saw the soldier approaching but he was so weary of life that he made no effort to avoid the blow. Suddenly the dumb son happened to notice the Persian attacking his father, and reached such a pitch of terror and grief that he started to speak and cried out, "Soldier, do not dare to kill the king." This was the first time he had spoken a word, but he afterwards retained the power of * speech as long as he lived.

* *Use Gerund.*

SECTION LXII

Indefinite Clauses

Indefinite Clauses are introduced in English by words ending in *-ever*. Their verbs are in the Indicative Mood. The Tense must be accurately expressed in Latin:—

whoever—*quisquis, quī*; whichever (*adj.*)—*quicumque*
whatever—*quicquid*.

whenever—*quotiēns, cum, quotiēnscumque, quandō-*
cumque, utcumque.

wherever—*ubicumque; quōcumque, quōquō*.

however—*utcumque*.

if ever—*sī quandō*.

E.g. *Quisquis ad tempus vēnerit, laudābitur—*
Whoever comes (will have come) in time,
will be praised.

Quotiēnscumque mē petistī, per mē tibi
*obstitī—*As often as you attacked me, I
resisted you by my own efforts.

Exercise CCXXXIV

1. Whenever I bought sheep, I was cheated.
2. As often as he tried to work, he was prevented by the shouts of the children.
3. Wheresoever we travel, there will be no place like home.
4. You are always welcome, wherever you go.
5. You must do whatever your wife asks you.
6. Whoever meets us will see to the preparation of a meal.
7. Whenever he comes home, he visits all his friends.

8. Let us follow Caesar, wherever he leads us.
9. Whenever he heard the birds sing, he rejoiced that winter was passing.
10. If ever we saw him in difficulties, we came to the rescue.

Exercise CCXXXV

1. Whoever he was, we refused to obey him.
2. Wherever you are, do not forget your friends.
3. We are not allowed to do whatever we wish.
4. If ever you have too much money, buy books.
5. As often as he tried to sing, we threw stones at him.
6. Wherever I went, I heard the same story.
7. Whenever you enter a shop, ask for how much the merchant sells his eggs.
8. Whoever reaches the other bank first will receive a great reward.
9. Whoever the woman is, I shall prevent her from entering my house.
10. However often you try, you will never learn to stand on your head.

SECTION LXIII

Correlatives

These are pairs of words consisting of Demonstrative Pronouns, Adjectives, or Adverbs followed by the corresponding Relatives translated in English by "as." They are used to express similarity or identity.

- tālis . . . quālis—such . . . as.
 tantus . . . quantus—so big . . . as.
 tantī . . . quantī—at as big a price . . . as.
 tantō . . . quantō—by so much . . . as.

eō . . . *quō*—by that much . . . as, the more . . . the more, with Comparatives.

īdem . . . *āc, quī*—the same . . . as.

tum . . . *cum*—then . . . when.

tam . . . *quam*—as . . . as.

tam diū . . . *quam diū*—as long as . . . so long.

totiēns . . . *quotiēns*—as often . . . as.

ibi . . . *ubi*—there . . . where.

inde . . . *unde*—from there . . . from where.

eō . . . *quō*—thither . . . whither.

tot . . . *quot*—as many . . . as.

ita . . . *ut*—so . . . as.

Note.—(1) The Subordinate Clause is a Relative Clause with its verb in the Indicative. Do not confuse these Clauses with Indirect Questions.

(2) As a rule the Relative Clause comes first.

E.g. *Quot hominēs, tot erant sententiae*—There were as many opinions as men.

(3) “such . . . as this.”

Hīc tam difficilis labor—such hard work as this.

Haec tanta victōria—such a great victory as this.

(4) *ēius modī*—of that kind, *hūius modī*—of this kind, may take the place of “*tālis*.”

(5) *quō* . . . *eō*; { by how much . . . by that much
 quantō . . . *tantō* { (Ablative of measure of difference)
 are used with the Indicative to express comparison.

E.g. *Quō māior, eō melior*—The bigger the better.

Exercise CCXXXVI

1. He said my garden was not as big as yours.
2. No one can be as stupid as you, my son.
3. There is no doubt that he is the same as he has always been.

4. His character is not such as you think.
5. The harder we work, the greater will be our reward.
6. Is your brother still living in the place where he was born?
7. We shall all go to the place from which no one returns.
8. The longer that friend of yours stays here, the more tiresome he becomes.
9. Let those who think as I do, raise their hands.
10. He is not so much ignorant of law as inexperienced in politics.

Exercise CCXXXVII

1. As you succeed, so will you be praised.
2. Tell me if the moon is as big as it seems to be.
3. I am unwilling to buy the farm for as much as you wish to sell it.
4. The children cannot help being of the same sort as their parents.
5. I have helped you as often as you have helped me.
6. It cannot be doubted that he is not the man he was.
7. If you spare them, you will get as much trouble as glory.
8. As long as Caesar was general, so long were the soldiers happy.
9. The shorter life is, the sweeter it is.
10. The older a man becomes, the more does he enjoy books.

SECTION LXIV

Indefinite Pronouns

Quis, quis, quid—anyone, anything (Indefinite Pronoun)

Quī, quae (qua), quod—any (Indefinite Adjective)

are used after **sī**—if; **nisi**—unless; **num**—whether, if; **nē**—lest; **quō, quantō**—by how much (with Comparatives).

E.g. **Rogāvit num quis scīret**—He asked if anyone knew.

Sī quem labōrantem vidēs. subvenīre dēbēs—
If you see anyone in difficulties, you ought to help.

Quō quis sapientior, eō fortior—The wiser a man is, the braver he is.

Ecquis? ecquid?—Is there anyone who? Is there anything which? (Pronoun).

Ecquī? ecquae? ecquod?—Is there any . . . who? (Adjective)

E.g. **Ecquis putat sē esse immortālem?**—Does anyone think he is immortal?

Quisquam, quisquam, quidquam—anyone, anything (Pronoun)

Ūllus, ūlla, ūllum—any (Adjective)

are used after negatives, or virtual negatives such as **vix**, **aegrē**—with difficulty, or questions expecting a negative answer.

E.g. **Negō ūllam mulierem adesse**—I say that no woman is present.

Vix quisquam effūgit—Hardly anyone escaped.

Quīvīs, quidvīs (Pronoun)—anyone (anything) you like.

Quīvīs, quaevīs, quodvīs (Adjective)—any . . . you like.

Quilibet, quidlibet (Pronoun)—anyone, anything you please.

Quilibet, quaelibet, quodlibet (Adjective)—any . . . you please.

E.g. Putāvī quodvīs perīculum mihī esse adeundum—

I thought that I must face any danger (you like).

Aliquis, aliquis, aliquid — someone (something), definite or important (Pronoun).

Aliquī, aliqua, aliquod — some . . ., definite or important (Adjective).

E.g. **Aliquid** certē perfēcī—I have certainly accomplished something.

Aliquod cōnsilium ineundum est — Some definite plan must be adopted.

Note.—In the Plural “some people” can be rendered by **aliquī, nōn nullī, or sunt quī.**

E.g. **Sunt quī** hōc negent—There are some who deny this.

Nōn nullōs accēpī librōs—I have received some books.

Quispiam—someone, is used mainly after **dīcō**—I say.

E.g. **Dīxerit quispiam**—Someone may say.

Nesciō quis, nesciō quis, nesciō quid—someone or other (Pronoun).

Nesciō quī, nesciō quae, nesciō quod—some or other (Adjective).

Be careful to distinguish

Nesciō quis loquitur—Somebody or other is speaking; and

Nesciō quis loquātur—I do not know who is speaking.

Note.—**Nesciō quō pactō**—somehow or other.

Quīdam, quaedam, quoddam—a certain one (often used to translate the English Indefinite Article).

E.g. **Tum quīdam “Quid? tū nescīs,” inquit, “hunc quaestōrem Syrācūsīs fuisse?”**—

Then a certain man said, “Don’t you know that our friend was quaestor at Syracuse?”

Quisque, quisque, quidque—each or every (Pronoun) is used

(1) After **sē** and **suus**.

(2) After Superlatives in the Singular (the Neuter of the Plural only is found).

(3) After Ordinals.

(4) After Relatives.

E.g. **Sapientissimus quisque**—All the wisest men.

Septimō quōque diē Rōmam venit—He comes to Rome every seventh day.

Suōs quisque liberōs amat—Every man loves his own children.

Quod quisque habet, id māgnī aestimat—Every man values what he has.

Quod cuique temporis ad vivendum datur, eō debet esse contentus—Each man ought to be content with the time given him to live.

Ūnus quisque—every single one.

E.g. **Dēsīgnat ad caedem ūnum quemque nostrum**—

He marks for assassination every single one of us.

Quōtus quisque—how few (followed by a Singular Verb) (*lit.* in what place in a series?)

E.g. **Quōtus quisque est quī hōc sciat!**—How few there are who know this!

Uter? utra? utrum?—which of the two? **utrī? utrae? utra?**—which of two sides? Often repeated.

E.g. **Uter utrum necāvit?**—which killed the other?

Uterque, utraque, utrumque—each of two, both (taken separately). **Uterque** is followed by the Genitive Case of Pronouns but is used as an adjective with nouns.

E.g. **Uterque nostrum**—Each of us two.

Uterque medicus sē mē sanāre posse affirmat—

Each of the two doctors affirms that he can cure me.

Uterque is used in the Plural to mean “each of two parties.”

The Plural is also found with nouns which have no Singular.

E.g. **Utraque castra**—each camp.

Ambō, ambae, ambō—both (two taken together).

Ipsē, ipsa, ipsum—self, may be used to strengthen the possessive pronouns in the Genitive Case (the Case of the Possessor).

E.g. **Meā ipsius operā**—By my own exertions.

Īdem, eādem, ĩdem—the same, is often used to join two attributes with the meaning “at the same time,” “likewise.”

E.g. **Vir innocentissimus ĩdemque doctissimus**—A very upright and at the same time a very learned man.

Alius, alia, aliud—other.

Note the following idioms:—

Aliud est imperāre, aliud pārēre—Commanding and obeying are two very different things.

Alii alia faciunt—Some are doing one thing, others another.

Nihil aliud nisi—nothing but.

E.g. **Exīstimābam nihil hominēs aliud Rōmae nisi dē quaestūrā meā loquī**—

I thought that at Rome men were speaking of nothing but my quaestorship.

Nēmō—no one, may also be used as an adjective with nouns.

E.g. **Nēmō agricola**—no one who is a farmer, *i.e.* no farmer.

Exercise CCXXXVIII

1. Tell me something new if you can.
2. They were sent away, each man to his own ship.
3. Which of the two boys is the elder? Both were born on the same day.
4. I said that no one would venture to come out that night.
5. Every third year the crops were destroyed by storms.
6. How few there are who can sing!
7. Some one or other has said that to err is human.
8. Does anyone think that you know everything?
9. All the worst citizens have now been thrown into prison.
10. It is still uncertain which of the two sides has been victorious.

Exercise CCXXXIX

1. I am inclined to think he is someone of importance.
2. Tell me if anyone will pay sixpence for this book.
3. Let no slave enter this temple.
4. Certain envoys have come from the ends of the earth.
5. The more one eats, the fatter one becomes.
6. Each of you will write fifty lines because of your idleness.
7. Some woman or other bought the dress before I could return.
8. Each man desires to protect what he loves.
9. Whatever you say, I have certainly accomplished something by my own exertions.
10. He is very poor and, at the same time, very proud.

Exercise CCXL

1. Let each pupil perform his duty by his own efforts.
2. I am afraid you think of nothing but pleasure.
3. To which of us two do you impute this as a fault?
To neither.
4. A considerable number of the bystanders saw him strike the orator.
5. I prefer to face any danger you like rather than surrender.
6. A certain person rose and objected to paying taxes.
7. He said that no animal was to be killed.
8. Each of the two parties resolved to make peace on these terms.
9. How few there are who can forgive their enemies!
10. All the conspirators to a man confessed that they were intent on revolution.

REVISION

Exercise CCXLI

1. If you ever do that again, I shall tell your mother.
2. A good many people believe he was purposely sent into danger.
3. I am sure that nobody can be trusted.
4. Some say that we won the victory, others say that neither party won.
5. If you have any news, don't hesitate to speak.
6. Whatever he did in his youth, he has certainly accomplished something in his old age.
7. He has often said that no pupil deserved a prize.
8. Choose anyone you like to command the army. It is of no importance to me.
9. I don't know who broke the table.
10. Somebody or other must know where he is.

Exercise CCXLII

1. A certain lady asked me to show her the famous statue.
2. Which of the two old men is the more wretched? The one is blind, but both are deaf.
3. Let each man seize the weapon which is nearest him.
4. I cannot forget for whose sake you suffered this wound.
5. Whatever corn is left must be destroyed.
6. Such a great task as this will terrify the lazy slaves.
7. There were not as many present as had promised to come.
8. Another such victory as great as this will cause our allies to revolt.

9. The recruits have come from the place from which so many have already come.
10. The dogs followed the shepherd wherever he went.

Exercise CCXLIII

1. The resources of our country are ^{tantum} as great ^{quantum} as we hoped.
2. The longer a man lives, the more does he value friendship.
3. He said that no soldier would do such a thing.
4. Let every man guard his own property.
5. The more you attend to other people's affairs, the less can you attend to your own.
6. Every (single) one who was present at the banquet was poisoned.
7. I am glad your daughter is as good as ^{tam} she is beautiful.
8. Their servants get nothing but bread and water in summer.
9. How few there are who never borrow anything!
10. Both parties ceased fighting at the same time.

Exercise CCXLIV

1. The jury could not decide which man killed the other.
2. They are accustomed to send us gifts every third year.
3. The priest urged all the richest men to provide larger victims.
4. Lest any pupil should complain afterwards, the teacher treated all alike.
5. Somehow or other the sailors succeeded in reaching the harbour safely.

6. Quite a few of the bystanders heard him threaten us with death.
7. It is expedient to rest every seventh day.
8. Don't tell anyone where you have come from.
9. You must guard such a valuable picture as this with the greatest care.
10. Your farm is as much bigger than mine as the sea is bigger than this lake.

Exercise CCXLV

1. All the best books have now been sold.
2. Anyone can see that he is as brave as he is wise.
3. The nearer one approaches the statue, the less does one admire it.
4. I am afraid your son is of the same character as his comrades.
5. Tell me what sort of a woman your wife is. Can she cook?
6. There are some who buy all the oldest furniture.
7. Hardly anyone believes that he has been bribed.
8. Unless someone comes to our help soon, we shall be compelled to surrender.
9. Whoever sold you that chariot for ten talents, cheated you.
10. I shall give you any reward you like, if you find my dog.

Exercise CCXLVI

So far are the Athenians from being ashamed of their poverty that they rather despise those who make a display of their riches. A very wealthy man once came to Athens and used to walk through the streets attended by a large retinue, conspicuous by his costly clothes and rings. He expected all the Athenians to

admire him, but, instead of envying him, they only pitied his stupidity. After enduring his arrogance patiently for many days, they at length determined to teach him how to behave in a more seemly fashion.

Exercise CCXLVII

When his retinue became a nuisance at the baths, one man said to his neighbour in such a way that the rich stranger could hear, "Is he afraid of being murdered while he is washing? Surely he doesn't need an army to protect him?" Then they forced him to put off his ornamented clothes by making fun of the many colours of his cloak. Whenever he came in sight, some one or other asked, "Is spring here already?" or "Where did the peacock come from?" Thus was he taught little by little, and at length left Athens a sadder but a wiser man.

Exercise CCXLVIII

While Demosthenes, the famous orator, was speaking in the assembly he noticed that no one was listening, so interrupting his speech, "I see," he said, "that my words are boring you. Listen, then, and I shall tell you a story: A certain man once hired an ass to go to the next town, but, as the sun was hot, and there were no trees on the road, he decided to sit down beneath the ass and rest in its shadow. The owner of the ass objected, however, and told him he had not hired the shadow. The other affirmed that it was obvious he had hired both the ass and the shadow." With these words the orator sat down, but soon everyone present was urging him to explain what the result was. Demosthenes then rose up and said: "Are you not ashamed of your

frivolity, citizens? Do you really prefer to hear a story about an ass's shadow rather than to deliberate about the safety of the State?"

Exercise CCXLIX

Hannibal once fell asleep and dreamed that he was summoned to an assembly of the gods. When he arrived at Olympus, Jupiter bade him invade Italy, and one of the gods was appointed to be his guide in the campaign. Under the leadership of this protector, he began his march from Spain, being first commanded not to look behind him. However, something or other compelled him before long to look back, when he saw a huge and dreadful monster, surrounded by serpents; wherever it advanced, it destroyed all the trees and buildings. Astonished at this, he asked the god what this monster signified: the answer was that it signified the destruction of Italy, and he was ordered to advance without hesitation, and not to pay any heed to the evils behind him.

SECTION LXV

Concessives

1. If the point conceded is regarded as a fact, use the Indicative Mood with **quamquam**, **tametsi**—although. (These conjunctions always take the Indicative.)

2. If the point conceded is not regarded as a fact, use the Subjunctive Mood after **quamvis**, **licet**, **ut**, **nē**, **cum** (which invariably takes the Subjunctive when meaning "although").

Etsi, **Etiamsi** take either Indicative or Subjunctive according to the sense, just like "si."

Licet, being present tense, can be followed only by the Present or Perfect Subjunctive according to the rules of sequence.

Quamvis is often used with adjectives and adverbs in the sense of "however."

E.g. **Medicī quamquam intellegunt saepe, tamen numquam aegrīs dīcunt—**

Although doctors often know, yet they never tell the sick.

Licet pecūniam mihī dēs, numquam patriam prōdam—

Though you offer me money, I shall never betray my country.

Etiamsī hōc fēcissēs, nōn nōbīs persuāsissēs—
Even if you had done this, you would not have persuaded us.

Nēmō, quamvis audāx (sit), hōc facere audēbit—

No one, however bold (he is), will dare to do this.

Quamquam may be used at the beginning of a sentence, to qualify preceding remarks, with the meaning "and yet."

E.g. **Quamquam quid loquor?—**

And yet, why do I speak?

Exercise CCL

1. Although you seem to be strong, you cannot lift this stone.
2. However great the enemy's forces are, we must not despair.
3. Even if I were to repent of my fault, I should not be forgiven.

4. Though I could have betrayed my country, I refused to be bribed.
5. Even though you think you are clever, all men laugh at you.
6. Even if the camp had not been taken, they would have been unable to hold out much longer.
7. Though you work all your life, you will never learn to speak Greek.
8. Notwithstanding the fact that he is very rich, he is not worthy of office.
9. Granted that you are well educated, yet you are ignorant of many things.
10. Though the king was inexperienced in war, he was loved by all the soldiers.

Exercise CCLI

1. However quickly you run, you always arrive late.
2. Even if I were to give you some money, you would not spend it wisely.
3. Though the doctor was very tired, he had to go out again that night.
4. Even though I were to wait here till he returned, I should not benefit you.
5. Although he is the king's son, he often forgets his duty.
6. In spite of being deaf in one ear, he hears very well.
7. Unaccustomed as he was to politics, he has been of great service to the State.
8. Although he pretended to be ill, he was sent to school.
9. Though he tried to swim, he sank to the bottom of the lake.
10. Born though he was of humble parents, yet he succeeded in becoming consul.

SECTION LXVI

(1) **Quippe quī**—"inasmuch as."

E.g. **Convīvia nōn inībat, quippe quī nē in oppidum quīdem venīret—**

He did not go to banquets, as he did not come to town either.

(2) **Praesertim quī**—"especially who," "and that though he."

E.g. **Tribūnō nōn pāruiſtī, cui tuus collega praesertim pārēret—**

You did not obey the tribune, and that though your colleague obeyed him.

(3) **Quī** (Causal and Concessive)—"because" or "although he," "in view of the fact that he," are followed by the Subjunctive Mood.

Peccāvī quī ā tē diſceſſerim—

I did wrong in leaving you (because I left you).

Exercise CCLII

1. Inasmuch as I am not accustomed to fear danger, I shall show you the way.
2. Cato, inasmuch as he had no hope of resisting Caesar, killed himself.
3. We admire you very much, and that too though you often make mistakes.
4. This merchant is cruel in cheating ignorant women.
5. You have done well, my son, especially for one so inexperienced.
6. You must be very clever to be able to write such a book.

7. I never saw Plato, inasmuch as I never went to Athens.
8. He is very learned, and that too though he never went to school.
9. Wretched man that I am,* in that I punished an innocent man!
10. You seem to have made a mistake in that you did not sell your farm before.

* *mē miserum* ! (acc. of exclamation).

Exercise CCLIII

1. Although you have forgotten everything, I shall forgive you.
2. Even though he did not commit that crime, he was rightly put to death.
3. Do not answer them, even if they threaten to kill you.
4. Inexperienced as you are in the art of speaking, you must address the citizens.
5. However much you tried to persuade me, I should refuse to stand for the consulship.
6. Whatever her wealth, you must not marry that woman.
7. Granted that they won the prize, why do they boast so much?
8. Even if he had repented, we should never have spared him.
9. However sweetly you sing, I shall not listen to you.
10. Notwithstanding the fact that he was unable to be present, he was blamed by all.

SECTION LXVII

Wishes

Wishes for the **Future** are expressed by the **Present Subjunctive**.

Wishes for the **Present** are expressed by the **Imperfect Subjunctive**.

Wishes for the **Past** are expressed by the **Pluperfect Subjunctive**.

The Negative is *nē*.

Wishes are often introduced by *utinam*, "would that."

E.g. Utinam taceās!—May you be silent!

Utinam nē tacēret!—(I wish) he were not silent!

Utinam tacuissent!—O that they had been silent!

Exercise CCLIV

1. May you always be lucky!
2. Would that this water were warmer!
3. Would that Tarquinius had not come to Rome!
4. If only I had not forgotten my name!
5. O that the consuls may save the State!
6. Would that I had not paid so much for the wine!
7. If only you had refused to listen to such a man!
8. O that this work had never been begun!
9. Would that we were at home!
10. If only I had remembered my wife's birthday!

Exercise CCLV

1. Would that I had not drunk so much water !
2. May his friends never discover what sort of a man he is !
3. If only we were not compelled to pay taxes !
4. O that I could find the books I am using !
5. Would that my friend had not destroyed the letter !
6. If only my pupils were worthy of praise !
7. May they always strive to become men like you !
8. O that the scout had told us where the enemy were hiding !
9. If only we were able to buy a few horses cheaply !
10. Would that you had not hindered me from doing my duty !

SECTION LXVIII**Potential Subjunctive**

The **Potential Subjunctive** is used in Simple sentences to express an opinion modestly. Grammatically these are the Principal Clauses of Conditional sentences with the "if" Clauses omitted.

The Potential is common with the following verbs :—

A. In the First Person—

"**Velim**"—I should like.

"**Nōlim**"—I should not like.

"**Mālim**"—I should prefer.

"**Ausim**"—I should dare.

"**Vellem**" — I should have liked.

"**Nōllem**"—I should not have liked.

"**Māllem**" — I should have preferred.

"**(vix) Crēdiderim**" — I *can* (scarcely) believe.

B. In the Second Person—

"Dīcās"—You would say.	"Dīcerēs"—You would have said.
"Crēdās"—You would believe.	"Crēderēs"—You would have believed.
"Putēs"—You would think.	"Putārēs"—You would have thought.

C. In the Third Person the Potential is used generally with Indefinite Pronouns or Interrogatives.

Note.—(1) The Potential Subjunctive may be followed by a Subjunctive of wish *without* "ut."

(2) When the Subject of both verbs is the same, the Infinitive is used.

E.g. Velim adesse—I should like to be present.

Velim adsīs—I should like you to be present.

Vellem adfuissēs—I could have wished you had been present.

Deliberative Subjunctive. Interrogative sentences which imply bewilderment or indecision have their verbs in the Subjunctive.

E.g. Quid faciam?—What am I to do?

Quid faceret?—What was he to do?

Exercise CCLVI

1. I should like you to know that I am of noble birth.
2. What was I to say? Whom was I to believe?
3. Someone may say that the conspirators ought to be brought to trial.
4. You would believe that he was quite mad.
5. I should have liked you to prevent him from coming here.
6. Were we to speak or leave the meeting without doing anything?

7. Who would ever think that you were an intimate friend of mine?
8. How am I to persuade Antony to spare Cicero?
9. I should like you to write to your mother every day, my son.
10. Whither are we to flee? We have neither money nor horses.

Exercise CCLVII

1. Please summon a doctor to cure the boy.
2. I would prefer you to finish your work before leaving.
3. I can scarcely believe he is so foolish as to dance every day.
4. You would have thought that no one was his match in eloquence.
5. I should venture to say that you are wasting your time.
6. You would think they were flowing with riches.
7. Please inform your mother that I am here.
8. Was I to show them where you were hiding?
9. If you are free from business, I should like you to come with me.
10. Am I to teach pupils till I am an old man?

SECTION LXIX

Conditional Clauses (*continued*)

A Subjunctive in the Principal Clause is replaced by the Indicative:—

1. With the verbs “*possum*”—I am able; “*dēbeō*”—I ought; “*volō*”—I wish “*oportet*”—it behoves;

and impersonal phrases compounded of a neuter adjective with "esse."

E.g. longum est—it would be tedious; melius fuit—it would have been better.

Sī adfuissēs, eum audīre potuistī—

If you had been present, you could have heard him.

2. When the Future Tense compounded of the Future Participle and parts of "esse," and when the Gerundive expressing obligation is used in the Principal Clause.

E.g. Sī mē prohibuissent, testēs citātūrus fuī—

If they had tried to prevent me, I should have called up witnesses.

Tum omnibus fuit moriendum, nisi subsidia advēnissent—

Then all would have had to die, had not reinforcements arrived.

Note.—After verbs of "trying" or "expecting" a "sī" Clause is used with the Subjunctive, usually with "possum."

E.g. Sī perrumpere possent, cōnātī sunt—They tried (to see) if they could break through.

Exercise CCLVIII

1. I could not have endured his insults, if you had been present.
2. We were on the point of departure, had not the messenger arrived.
3. If they had wished to escape, they could have killed the guard.

4. You would have to march more quickly, if you were to overtake them.
5. It would be easy to finish your work, if you were to try.
6. You ought to have started yesterday, if you had wished to reach Rome to-day.
7. They were waiting (to see) if the enemy would retreat.
8. It would be disgraceful to favour these pupils.
9. If the ship had not arrived, we should have had to surrender.
10. If he had confessed, I should have had to spare him.

Exercise CCLIX

1. To-morrow they will try (to see) if they can swim across the bay.
2. He was intending to kill the sheep, if the shepherd had not seen him.
3. You could have bought the picture, if you had come in time.
4. It would have been tedious to listen to that orator.
5. If he had stood for the consulship, you ought to have elected him.
6. If the war is to be undertaken, you ought to enrol recruits.
7. The enemy will try (to see) if they can capture our trenches.
8. It would have been better to surrender sooner.
9. It would be easy to say nothing but good about him.
10. If he were to come, the money would have to be given to him.

REVISION

Exercise CCLX

1. Though injustice is sometimes of advantage, yet it ought not to be approved of.
2. However bitterly she weeps, I shall not give way.
3. Supposing they are conquered, they will not despair.
4. Your crimes will follow you, however far you travel.
5. Though a great storm had arisen, Caesar set sail in a little boat.
6. You are lucky in so far as you have never lacked friends.
7. Where was I to go? I had no one to trust.
8. It would have been better to pay the fine.
9. If only the rain does not destroy my crops this summer!
10. The dog waited (to see) if the lion would run away.

Exercise CCLXI

1. Granted that this book is worth little, it cost me much labour.
2. Would that my daughter had never married that man!
3. Though this is true, you must tell no one.
4. I should like you to start as soon as possible.
5. Was I to run away and desert my friends in such a crisis?
6. They could have come sooner, if they had been informed yesterday.
7. Though the river is full of fish, he cannot catch even one.
8. The consuls are foolish in that they do not preserve the ancient customs.
9. O that he had given me a chance of explaining!
10. It would be tedious to explain what I mean.

Exercise CCLXII

1. If only I could prevent the rumour from reaching my parents!
2. They tried in every way (to see) if they could convict him.
3. The king would rather perish himself than lose so many soldiers.
4. Though you were to give me all your goods, you would not persuade me.
5. Would that the waves were not so high!
6. However wise you think you are, I am afraid you have made many mistakes.
7. Although he was now well advanced in years, he still took part in politics.
8. The judge remains unmoved, and that though he is condemning his old friends to death.
9. Notwithstanding the fact that he has more money than I have, I do not envy him.
10. She ought to have been brought home at once, if she had been ill.

Exercise CCLXIII

1. May you become a better man than your father!
2. I can scarcely believe that you are skilled in the art of speaking.
3. Who would have thought that he could move the stone?
4. Even if all the roads were blocked with snow, I should try to report the matter to you.
5. Someone may say that you have acted rashly.
6. We should like them to stop speaking.
7. I wish they had not forbidden us to drink the wine!

8. Inasmuch as you are not worthy of praise, I shall say nothing about you.
9. Where was I to obtain another horse like this?
10. However much you resent this, you will have to bear it.

Exercise CCLXIV

Dionysius, the tyrant, used sometimes to write poems, and, as usually happens, thought himself endowed with no little skill. Everyone, fearing the tyrant's anger, slavishly praised his lines, however bad they were. Once, however, the poet Philoxenus happened to be present, and was asked his opinion about the tyrant's poem. Not being accustomed to flatter, Philoxenus freely said what he thought. Thereupon the tyrant became enraged, and ordered the poet to be flung into prison. Next day, however, Dionysius was persuaded to forgive the poet, and he invited him to a banquet that very night. During dinner, the tyrant again recited some lines, and asked the poet if these were better or not. This time Philoxenus did not reply to his question, but, turning to the guards, bade them conduct him back to prison.

Exercise CCLXV

Of all the governors none showed himself so brave as Bogen, whom the king could never praise enough. At the time when he was besieged by the Athenians under Cimon, though he might have retired from the city under terms and returned to Asia, he refused, lest the king should think he had surrendered to save his own life. So he resisted bravely until he was reduced to the last extremity. When all the food was finished,

he ordered a vast funeral-pile to be constructed, slew his wife, his children, and his slaves, and cast them into the flames. Then, collecting whatever gold or silver there was in the city, he flung it from the walls into the river and finally leaped into the fire himself. For this reason the king took care to honour the surviving sons for the sake of their father's bravery.

Exercise CCLXVI

One day a certain stupid fellow began to throw stones at the philosopher Aesop. To make him stop, and to punish him at the same time, Aesop threw him a penny and said, "I am only a poor slave, and have nothing else to give you. You are wrong to attack the poor. I advise you rather to throw stones at that man over there, because I know he is rich and can give you much money." Thereupon the troublesome fellow ran away at once and, relying upon Aesop's advice, began to annoy the rich man. He, however, quietly told his slaves to seize the madman and see to it that he was imprisoned. In this way the philosopher both avoided danger himself and taught the fool to reflect before acting.

Exercise CCLXVII

As Caesar entered the senate-house the conspirators, who were all on intimate terms with him, came forward and conducted him to his accustomed seat. Then one of them came nearer and, pretending that he wished to ask something, suddenly seized Caesar's toga and dragged it from his shoulders. While Caesar in astonishment was demanding what this violence meant, Casca silently approached from behind and plunged a dagger in his neck. Caesar vainly tried to rise, but was wounded a

second time, and, seeing the conspirators advancing upon him from all sides, he covered his head with the toga and calmly faced death. Except at the first blow Caesar uttered no cry, though he was stabbed again and again. After finishing their work the conspirators fled, and the body lay near the statue of Pompey until three faithful slaves found it and took it home on a litter.

SECTION LXX

Comparative Clauses

Certain types of Comparative Clauses have already been treated:—

For *quam quī* (*ut*) after a Comparative, *see* Section XXX. For *tantus . . . quantus*; *eō . . . quō*, *see* Section LXIII. For Comparatives after *plūs*, *potius*, *magis*, *see* Section LVIII.

A Comparative Clause is a Subordinate Clause expressing a likeness, difference, contrast with the Principal Clause.

If the Subordinate Clause states a fact, the Indicative is used.

If the Subordinate Clause does not state a fact, the Subjunctive is used.

As in Conditional sentences great care must be taken to observe sequence of tenses, as English is often confusing.

Some of the commonest conjunctions introducing such clauses are:—

“*Ita ut*”—as; “*quem ad modum*”—as; “*īdem atque*”—the same as; “*aliud (āc) quam*”—other

than; “*contrā quam*”—otherwise than; “*quasi*”—as if; “*velut sī*”—as if; “*tamquam sī*”—just as if; “*perinde āc*”—much as if, exactly as; “*pārīter āc*”—equally, just as if; “*prō eō āc*”—as, in proportion to; “*haud secus āc*”—no differently from; “*aliter āc*”—otherwise. “*tamquam*” is often used with a single word.

E.g. *Sed quid ego hīs testibus ūtor quasi rēs dubia sit?*—

But why do I use these witnesses as if there were any doubt?

Vēr tamquam adulēscēntiam sīgnificat—
Spring, as it were, signifies youth.

Prō eō āc dēbuī officium praestitī—
I performed my duty as I ought.

Notice the following phrases with “*ut*.”

“*ut in tālī rē*”—as in such circumstances (it was natural or fitting).

“*ut in tantō rērum dīscrīmine*”—as in such a crisis (it was natural or fitting).

“*ut in rē imprōvīsā*”—as in such unforeseen circumstances (it was natural or fitting).

“*ut in Rōmānō*”—considering he was a Roman.

Exercise CCLXVIII

1. He continued to play, just as if the enemy's fleet was not in sight.
2. You seem to be acting strangely, considering the gravity of the situation.
3. They ran away exactly like men who were afraid of a shout.

4. Why do you behave as if you were a tyrant?
5. They talk much, as if they knew everything.
6. We have been defeated again, just as I expected.
7. I complained as much as if I had suffered this in person.
8. Contrary to what we thought, they reached home safely.
9. The woman was laughing, as if she were crazy.
10. As was natural in such a crisis, he consulted the senate.

Exercise CCLXIX

1. He began to cry, as if he were ashamed of his crime.
2. The farmers acted differently from what they promised.
3. Athens is, as it were, the source of all the arts.
4. You are too young, my son, to remember your father.
5. We ought to work hard, exactly as if the teacher were present.
6. I am just as intimate with Caesar now as I once was with you.
7. The foolish boy remains silent, just as if he could not speak.
8. You have injured me too much to be pardoned.
9. Just as if he did not recognise me, he passed by in silence.
10. We were just as glad as if we had won a prize ourselves.

SECTION LXXI

The Supine

The Supine in **-um** may be used with verbs of motion to express purpose. (But purpose is usually expressed by **ut, nē, quī** with the Subjunctive or by the Gerundive.)

E.g. Equitēs pabulātum vēnērunt—The cavalry came to forage.

The Supine in **-um** may be used to express the future passive after verbs or expressions of "saying" or "thinking." (*See Section IX.*)

E.g. Spērō castra captum irī—I hope the camp will be taken.

The Supine in **-ū** (Ablative) may be used after "facilis"—easy; "difficilis"—difficult; "dignus"—worthy; "fās est"—it is lawful; "nefās est"—it is unlawful; "mīrābilis"—wonderful.

E.g. mīrābile dictū—wonderful to relate.
nefas occīsū—it is unlawful to kill.

Exercise CCLXX

1. We shall send envoys to demand satisfaction.
2. It is a sin to say that any boy is incapable of learning something.
3. Surely you do not think that this is easy to understand?
4. I hope these books will be sent back as soon as possible.
5. I am afraid the bird is difficult to see on account of the leaves.
6. We shall set out in the morning to see the games.

7. Wonderful to relate, he was the first to finish.
8. It is easy to see that he is tired of your conversation.
9. We promised that the city of Carthage would be destroyed.
10. It is very difficult to find out where the enemy are hiding.

SECTION LXXII

Verbs taking more than one Case Construction

cavēre aliquem—to beware of someone.

cavēre alicuī—to beware for someone.

cēlāre aliquid aliquem	} to conceal something from someone, to keep someone in the dark about some- thing.
cēlāre aliquem dē aliquā	
rē	

circumdāre oppidum mūrō—to surround the town with a wall.

circumdāre mūrum oppidō—to put a wall round the town.

cōnsulere aliquem—to consult someone, ask someone's advice.

cōnsulere alicuī—to consult the interests of someone.

cōnsulere dē—to consult about.

convenīre aliquem—to meet someone.

convenīre alicuī—to agree with someone (used impersonally).

E.g. Rēs convenit mihi cum Caesare.

dōnāre aliquid alicuī	} to give something to someone as a gift.
dōnāre aliquem aliquā rē	

induere(exuere)	{	aliquem veste	} to clothe (strip) some- one with (of) a garment.
		alicuī vestem	

metuere aliquem—to fear someone.

metuere alicuī—to fear for someone.

temperāre (moderārī) irae (dat.)—to check, restrain anger.

temperāre (moderārī) rēs—to control affairs.

prōspicere (prōvidēre) aliquid—to foresee something.

prōspicere (prōvidēre) alicuī—to provide for someone.

vacāre negōtiō (abl.)—to be at leisure from business.

vacāre philosophiae (dat.)—to have leisure for philosophy.

Exercise CCLXXI

1. Though I foresaw the dangers of war, I did not provide for my own safety.
2. Since I wish to consult the interests of the State, I shall ask my father's opinion.
3. Relying on your advice, I kept my brother in the dark about the money.
4. How few there are who have leisure for philosophy!
5. You are not fit to govern the Gauls, because you cannot restrain your temper.
6. If help does not come soon, we shall be compelled to draw a trench round the camp.
7. The old man was always warning the children to beware of the dog.
8. When we shall have leisure from this work I do not know.
9. He rose early and hastily put on his clothes.
10. We have been asked to bestow rewards on these brave boys.

Exercise CCLXXII

1. I would like you to meet me this afternoon.
2. When I heard these old songs, I could not check my tears.
3. Though I were to dress myself in the toga, no one would think me a Roman citizen.
4. We must go to Rome to consult about the corn supply.
5. There is no doubt that all the best people dress their children well.
6. When he resigned office, his friends presented him with a picture.
7. Why did you try to hide the terms of the treaty from us?
8. Don't forget to take off your clothes before you enter the water.
9. While you were climbing the high tree, I feared for you.
10. How will you control affairs without providing for the poor?

REVISION

Exercise CCLXXIII

1. He drew his sword and charged us like a madman.
2. You will need help, just as much as if you were poor.
3. Governing others and controlling yourself are two very different things.
4. Nothing pleases me so much as a loyal servant.
5. When did your master put a wall round his farm?
6. It is very easy to see how much money you have.

7. My mother dressed me in a new tunic and took me to see the games.
8. A State can be ruled in exactly the same way as a household.
9. Wherever you are, try to restrain your anger.
10. Tell him the eggs will be sent to-morrow.

Exercise CCLXXIV

1. When you go to Rome, my son, beware of thieves.
2. I should like you to consult your friends about this to-day.
3. Taking off his clothes, he plunged into the river.
4. It is the duty of parents to provide for their children.
5. Why are you so angry with me, as if I were the only one who is guilty?
6. You ought to behave always just as if we could all see you.
7. Hope is, as it were, the light in the darkness.
8. I blame you just as much as if you had actually killed him.
9. The enemy were driven like dust by the wind.
10. If you win the prize, I shall give you a present of a horse.

Exercise CCLXXV

1. The general deserves to be blamed, because he took no precautions for the safety of his men.
2. It is unlawful to strike a priest, however angry you may be.
3. They promised that the letter would be written at once.

4. The prisoner vainly tried to conceal his crime from the jury.
5. There was a rumour that every fourth man would be chosen.
6. When I have leisure from my business, I shall go to the country.
7. He spoke exactly like a man who knows he is guilty.
8. As a dog drives a flock of sheep, so did he drive his enemies from the forum.
9. He killed himself, because the pain was too great to bear.
10. The robber was acquitted, contrary to what he deserved.

Exercise CCLXXVI

1. The fat man sank like a stone to the bottom of the lake.
2. The consuls are conducting affairs much as if it were of no importance to us.
3. Why do you not use your books as friends?
4. In proportion to the number of the combatants, very few were killed.
5. When peace was made, I sent back the hostages just as I ought.
6. My advice is the same now as it was two years ago.
7. The children, as was natural in such a crisis, fled to their mother.
8. I object to your receiving a prize, just as if you had worked hard.
9. It is wrong to condemn anyone unheard.
10. As the sun melts the snow, so did the orator cause the multitude to disperse.

SECTION LXXIII

All Subordinate Clauses, Adjectival or Adverbial, depending on an Indirect Statement, Question, or Command, have their verbs in the Subjunctive Mood.

E.g. Mē rogāvit ut domum, quam aedificāset, emerem—

He asked me to buy the house which he had built.

Dixi mē, cum rediissem, hōc factūrum esse—
I said I would do this when I returned.

Exercise CCLXXVII

1. Don't you think you ought to finish this work before the master returns?
2. Tell me when you will visit the estates which you possess in Spain.
3. He said you were not the man whose money had been lost.
4. It is well known that he will be thrown into prison, if he enters the city.
5. His friends said that he stayed at home because he was a coward.
6. I asked my father to buy me a ball when he went to town.
7. We are afraid you will not see your friend, whose name we always forget.
8. Do you believe that the servants who are in your house are honest?
9. He promised to come to the place where I was standing.
10. He was sure that, if he did not conceal his fault from us, he would be severely punished.

Exercise CCLXXVIII

1. There is a rumour that there is no fresh water in the place to which you are going.
2. They urged me to punish the boys, whom they accused of laziness.
3. Did you say that you sold the house for as much as you bought it for?
4. Tell me who gave you the book you are using.
5. You would think that he was a man who owned a country house.
6. Did you persuade him to come home before he spent his money?
7. They threatened to inform the police, if he didn't stop singing.
8. There was no doubt that he was the boy who broke the window.
9. We request all who have not paid their taxes to come here to-morrow.
10. I am sure that we must beware of the men who tried to bribe us.

SECTION LXXIV

Sē and Suus

sē, suī, sibi and suus, sua, suum are used

1. In Principal Clauses when referring to the **Subject** of the Third Person. Otherwise "is, ea, id" are used.

E.g. Pater liberōs suōs amat sed vitia eōrum ōdit—
A father loves **his own** children, but hates **their** faults.

(*Note.*—Pater liberōs suōs amat—A father loves **his own** children (in contrast with other people's); otherwise suus is not required. *E.g.* Pater liberōs amat—A father loves his children.)

2. In Subordinate Clauses **sē**, **suus** are used to refer to the subject of the Principal Clause when it is evidently part of the speech or thought of the subject of the Principal Clause. But in many cases only a knowledge of the context can remove ambiguity. Latin, like English, does not always succeed. The use of "**ipse**" referring to the subject of the Principal Clause, especially where special emphasis is required, may sometimes help to secure clearness.

E.g. Caesar militēs interrogāvit cur dē **suā** virtūte aut dē **ipsius** diligentiā dēspērārent—

Caesar asked his soldiers why they despaired of **their own** courage or of **his own** care.

3. **sē**, **suus** are used without reference to the subject necessarily:—

(a) When it means his, her (its), their own special.

E.g. Scīpiō **suās** rēs Syrācūsānīs restituit—

Scipio restored the Syracusans **their own** possessions.

Cf. "**fidūcia suī**" — self - confidence; "**suī compos**" — in possession of himself, master of himself, etc.

(b) When **suus** is followed by "**quisque**."

E.g. **Suus cuique mōs**—

Every man has his own custom.

Sibi quisque habeat quod suum est—

Let every man have what is his own.

(c) After the prepositions "**cum**"—with; "**inter**" —among, between; "**praeter**" — besides; "**propter**"—on account of; "**ex**"—out of, etc.

E.g. **Inter sē amant**—They love one another.

Exercise CCLXXIX

1. I asked if this concerned him, but he said it was no business of his.
2. When the work was done, the master dismissed the boys, each to his own home.
3. The citizens were unwilling to entrust themselves and all their property to the cruel general.
4. I said that he did not know how to save himself.
5. It cannot be that they have formed this plan of their own accord.
6. I am inclined to think he has too little self-confidence.
7. The order was given that every man should look to himself.
8. They asked me to come with them every day.
9. We shall have to retreat before long (soon).
10. The king himself was the first to urge the citizens to obey their own laws.

Exercise CCLXXX

1. There is no doubt that they are very fond of each other.
2. He who lives for himself alone is no use to his fellow citizens.
3. Not even his own father tried to save the young man's life.
4. He promised to spare those who surrendered of their own accord.
5. Self-confidence is sometimes the mark of a fool.
6. He said they would not bring their children with them.

7. Alexander, after killing his friend, wished to kill himself also, but his companions prevented him.
8. They ordered him to send them the best wine they had.
9. We shall urge the envoys to report this, each to his own countrymen.
10. They informed him that they were willing to go with him.

SECTION LXXV

Ōrātiō Oblīqua

A speech, long or short, may be expressed in two ways: (1) by the actual words of the speaker (*Ōrātiō Recta*), or (2) by the words of the speaker as reported by another person (*Ōrātiō Oblīqua*).

- A. (1) When the speaker's direct words are quoted, *inquit*—"he said," is inserted after the first few words.

E.g. "*Hōc factō*," *inquit*, "*redībō*"—
"After doing this, I shall return," he said.

- (2) When the speaker's words are reported by another person, they are introduced by some word like *dīxit*, expressed or understood.

E.g. (*Dīxit*) *sē mox reditūrum esse*—
(He said) he would return soon.

- B. The following changes must be made in converting *Ōrātiō Recta* into *Ōrātiō Oblīqua*.

(1) **Moods.**—The Indicative and Imperative Moods disappear. (*Dum*—while, representing a longer period

during which something else occurs, may be followed by the Present Indicative even in $\bar{O}.O.$)

All Principal Statements or Denials are put in the Infinitive Mood.

$\bar{O}.R.$

E.g. Statim veniam—I shall come at once.

$\bar{O}.O.$

(Dixit) sē statim ventūrum esse—

(He said) he would come at once.

All Commands, Requests, and Prohibitions are put in the Subjunctive Mood.

$\bar{O}.R.$

E.g. Hōc fac—Do this.

Nōlī hōc facere—Do not do this.

$\bar{O}.O.$

(Imperāvit ut) hōc faceret—

He ordered him to do this.

(Imperāvit) nē hōc faceret—

He ordered him not to do this.

Note that *ut* is not expressed, but *nē* is generally expressed.

Questions are put in the Subjunctive Mood.

$\bar{O}.R.$

E.g. Quid facis?—What are you doing?

$\bar{O}.O.$

(Rogāvit) quid faceret—

He asked what he was doing.

Rhetorical Questions in the First and Third Persons (*i.e.*, questions which are equivalent to statements) are put in the Accusative and Infinitive.

Ō.R.

E.g. Quid restat?—

What remains? (=nothing remains).

Ō.O.

Quid restāre?—

(He asked) what remained?

All Subordinate Clauses are put in the Subjunctive Mood.

Ō.R.

E.g. Liber quem habeo novus est—

The book, which I have, is new.

Ō.O.

(Dixit) librum, quem habēret, novum esse—

He said that the book which he had, was new.

(2) Tenses.—Reported Speech is generally in past time, and accordingly the Sequence of Tenses is usually Historic.

Conditional Clauses in **Ō.O.**

Ō.R.

Sī hōc facis, peccās.

Sī hōc fēcistī, peccāvistī.

Sī hōc faciēbās, peccābās. Sī hōc faciās, peccēs.

Sī hōc faciēs, peccābis. Sī hōc facerēs, peccārēs.

Sī hōc fēceris, peccābis. Sī hōc fēcissēs, peccāvissēs.

Ō.O.

(Dixit) eum, sī id faceret, (Dixit) eum, sī id faceret,
peccāre. peccāvisse.

(Dixit) eum, sī id faceret, (Dixit) eum, sī id faceret,
peccāre. peccātūrum esse.

(Dixit) eum, sī id faceret, (Dixit) eum, sī id faceret,
peccātūrum esse. peccātūrum esse.

(Dixit) eum, sī id fēcisset, (Dixit) eum, sī id fēcisset,
peccātūrum esse. peccātūrum fuisse.

(3) Pronouns—

Ō.R.	Ō.O.
ego	sē, ipsum
nōs	sē, ipsōs
meus, noster	suus ipsīus, ipsōrum
tū	is, ille
vōs	eī, illī
hīc, iste	is, ille

(For the distinction between sē, ipsum ; suus, ipsīus ; see Section LXXIV.).

(4) Adverbs—

Ō.R.	Ō.O.
hīc	ibi
hūc	eō
hinc	inde
nunc	tum, tunc, iam
hodiē	illō diē
herī	prīdiē
crās	postrīdiē

Example of Ō.R. converted into Ō.O. (after a Past Tense):—

 1. Ō.R. (*The Germans address Caesar*):

Germānī neque priōrēs populō Rōmānō bellum īferunt, neque tamen recūsant, sī laccessuntur, quīn armīs contendant. Vēnimus invītī, ēiectī domō: sī nostram grātiām Rōmānī volunt, possumus iīs ūtilēs esse amīcī: vel nōbis agrōs attribuant vel patiantur nōs tenēre quōs armīs possēdimus: nōs ūnīs Suēbīs concēdimus quibus nē dī quīdem immortalēs parēs esse possunt: reliquus quīdem in terrīs est nēmō quem nōn superāre possīmus.

Ō.O. Germānōs neque priōrēs populō Rōmānō bellum inferre, neque tamen recūsāre, sī lacesserentur, quīn armīs contenderent. Sē vēnisse invītōs, ēiectōs domō: sī suam grātiā Rōmānī vellent, posse iīs ūtilēs esse amīcōs: vel sibi agrōs attribuerent, vel paterentur eōs tenēre quōs armīs possēdissent: sēsē ūnīs Suēbīs concēdere, quibus nē dī quīdem immortalēs parēs esse possent: reliquum quīdem in terrīs esse nēminem quem nōn superāre possent.

Example of **Ō.O.** converted into **Ō.R.** (after a Present Tense):—

2. (*Caesar's reply*):

Ō.O. Sibi nūllam cum hīs amīcitiam esse posse, sī in Galliā remanērent: nūllōs in Galliā vacāre agrōs, quī darī sine iniūriā possint: sed licēre, sī velint, in Ubiōrum finibus cōsīdere, quōrum sint lēgātī apud sē: hōc sē Ubiīs imperātūrum esse.

Ō.R. Mihi nūlla vōbīscum amīcitia esse potest, sī in Galliā remanētis; nūllī in Galliā vacant agrī, quī darī sine iniūriā possint; sed licet, sī vultis, in Ubiōrum finibus cōsīdere, quōrum sunt lēgātī apud mē; hōc ego Ubiīs imperābō.

Exercise CCLXXXI

Translate into Latin in **Ōrātiō Recta**, and then turn into **Ōrātiō Oblīqua** after a verb of "saying" in the Past Tense.

1. I advise you to read the book which I am sending.
2. Do not wait here till I come back.
3. Do they know when he promised to start?
4. He is not the man to avoid danger.
5. Whatever this boy does, he does badly.

6. Are we down-hearted?
7. I am afraid he does not believe me.
8. Fight bravely and do not fear any danger.
9. When we see him, we shall ask when he is coming here.
10. To-day I shall go with you to see the games.

Exercise CCLXXXII

1. We shall not be allowed to go to the theatre to-night.
2. Return to your farm, and do not waste time here.
3. Since this is the case, let us send the best men we have.
4. After selling his country house, he decided to return to this town.
5. Though you may be a man of great strength, you cannot lift that load alone.
6. Ask the scouts how many perished in this battle.
7. Is it worth my while to put on my new clothes?
8. We must send these eggs back to the merchant at once.
9. While you are travelling in France, send me a letter every day.
10. Enough water was brought to put out the fire.

Exercise CCLXXXIII

Turn the following sentences from *Ōrātiō Oblīqua* into *Ōrātiō Recta*.

1. Classem ingentem apparārī ad Siciliam repetendam eamque sē crēdere brevī trāiectūram.

2. Redirent itaque properē in colōniās, et tamquam rē integrā cum suis cōsulerent.
3. Sibi nūllam cum hīs amicitiam esse posse, sī in Galliā remanērent.
4. Quod sī veteris contumēliae oblivisci vellet, num etiam recentium iniuriarum memoriam depōnere posse?
5. Nōne vidērent dē libertāte ipsōrum eō diē agi?
6. Quā rē timērent eōs quōs totiēns antea superāvissent? Fortiter prōgrederentur.
7. Arcem iam esse tradendam. Quid aliud sē facere posse?
8. Sē proximā nocte castra mōtūrum ut quam primum intellegere posset utrum apud eōs pudor an timor valeret.
9. Nē diūtius morārentur. Sī illō diē profecti essent, proximō diē Rōmam perventūrōs esse.
10. Neque recūsaturōs quō minus perpetuō sub illōrum dīciōne atque imperiō essent.

Exercise CCLXXXIV

1. Sēsē parātōs esse portās aperire quaeque imperāset facere et ducem vīvum eius potestāti tradere.
2. Sī sibi pārērent, Rōmānōs brevī inopiā peritūrōs esse.
3. Hostibus quī instārent fortiter resisterent.
4. Perfacile esse cum virtūte omnibus praestārent, tōtius Galliae imperiō potiri.
5. Sibi numquam placuisse Avaricum dēfendī, cuius rēi testēs ipsōs habere.
6. Quae omnia et sē tulisse patienter et esse lātūrum.
7. Persās pūgnātūrōs esse quia fugere nōn possent.

8. Numquam sē āmissō exercitū, quem ā Caesare accēpisset in ēius cōspectum reversūrum.
9. Quā rē nē committerent ut is locus ubi cōstitissent ex calamitāte populī Rōmānī nōmen caperet aut memoriam prōderet.
10. Sē victōs cōfiterī; ōrāre atque obsecrāre, sī quī locus misericordiae relinquerētur, nē ad ultimum supplicium prōgrederentur.

SECTION LXXVI

“Would have”

“Would have” in Conditional Clauses:—

- (1) In Ōrātiō Recta. In the Principal Clause of a Conditional Sentence “would have” is normally expressed by the Pluperfect Subjunctive.

E.g. Sī vēnissem, hōc vīdissem—

If I had come, I should have seen this.

- (2) In Ōrātiō Oblīqua—

- A. In Indirect Statement “would have” is expressed by the Future Participle and “fuisse.”

E.g. Dīxī mē, sī vēnissem, hōc vīsūrum fuisse—

I said that, if I had come, I should have seen this.

Note.—If the verb has no supine, “would have” is expressed by the impersonal phrase “futūrum fuisse ut” with the Imperfect Subjunctive.

E.g. Crēdō futūrum fuisse ut hōc pōsceret—

I believe he would have demanded this.

B. In Consecutive sentences, Indirect Questions and "Doubting" sentences, "would have" is expressed by the Future Participle and the Perfect Subjunctive of "sum."

E.g. **Rogāvī quid, sī hōc accidisset, factūrus fuerit—**

I asked what he would have done, if this had happened.

Nōn dubium est quīn, sī adfuisset, orātiōnem habitūrus fuerit—

There is no doubt that, if he had been present he would have made a speech.

Tam stultus erat ut, nisi prohibuissem, sē in flūmen prōiectūrus fuerit—

He was so foolish that, if I had not prevented him, he would have thrown himself into the river.

N.B.—If the verb has no supine the Pluperfect Subjunctive is to be used as in *Orātiō Recta*.

E.g. **Sciō quid, sī rogātus esset, popōscisset—**

I know what he would have demanded, if he had been asked.

Exercise CCLXXXV

1. Tell me what you would have done, if you had been caught by your father.
2. If we had not trusted the guide, we should never have returned to camp.
3. There is no doubt that, if he had been wise, he would have sold his estate.
4. I believe that my son would have learned much, if you had been able to teach him.
5. Do you know what I should have said, if you had not worked hard?

6. We were so tired that we should not have reached the top of the mountain, if the natives had not carried us.
7. The king said that he would not have believed me, had he not seen the jewels.
8. We do not doubt that he would have recovered, if the doctor had been summoned.
9. He is so honest that he would have paid all the taxes, if he had had enough money.
10. The old man was so strong that, if he had retired to the country, he would have lived for many years.

SECTION LXXVII

"Would have been"

(1) In *Ōrātiō Recta* "would have been" in the Principal Clause of a Conditional sentence is expressed by the Pluperfect Subjunctive Passive.

E.g. Sī mānsissēs, captus essēs—

If you had remained, you would have been captured.

(2) In *Ōrātiō Oblīqua—*

A. In Indirect Statement "would have been" is expressed by "*futūrum fuisse ut*" with the Imperfect Subjunctive Passive.

E.g. Crēdō futūrum fuisse ut necārētur—

I believe he would have been killed.

B. In Consecutive Clauses, Indirect Questions and "Doubting" Clauses, the Pluperfect Subjunctive of *Ōrātiō Recta* is retained.

E.g. Nōn dubium est quīn, sī mānsissēs, captus essēs—

There is no doubt that, if you had remained, you would have been captured.

Exercise CCLXXXVI

1. Many thought the town would have been lost, had not the news of the victory been brought.
2. The storm was so great that the ships would have been sunk, had they not reached harbour.
3. It is clear that you would never have been blamed, if you had not been guilty.
4. I am certain that the king would never have been conquered, if you had not been elected general.
5. Do you know who would have been accused of the crime, if I had been murdered?
6. He showed me where the house would have been built, if he had not been bankrupt.
7. These men are so brave that, if their leader had been skilled in the art of war, they would never have been conquered.
8. There is no doubt that, if water had not been brought sooner, the house would have been burned.
9. I am sure that, if the boys had played in the house, the windows would have been broken.
10. The robber was so wicked that, had he not confessed, he would never have been pardoned.

REVISION**Exercise CCLXXXVII**

1. I advise you to spare the man who really repents of his crime.
2. They said they would come after they received your letter.

3. There is no doubt the wolf would have escaped, had not my dog found the tracks.
4. The walls were so high that the citizens would easily have repulsed the forces you sent.
5. Tell me whether you read the letter I sent you.
6. He was so clever that he could have built the ship by his own exertions.
7. I am sure the water would have been too cold.
8. Who can doubt that the poet would have been killed by the tree, had not a god protected him?
9. He said he would not bring anyone who refused to come of his own accord.
10. The magistrates are disputing amongst themselves whether to resist or yield.

Exercise CCLXXXVIII

1. His own mother would not have recognised the boy, had she seen him then.
2. So many people perished of the disease that there was no one left to bury the dead.
3. The prisoner hopes he will not be condemned before his friends are informed.
4. They are so fond of each other that we cannot help envying them.
5. We urged each man to bring with him his own food.
6. They say he would have demanded a hundred hostages, if he had defeated us.
7. He thought his son would have succeeded, if he had worked harder.
8. I cannot doubt that the maid would have poisoned us, if she had prepared dinner.

9. Caesar's self-confidence was so great that he was never afraid of anything.
10. Matters had reached such a crisis that the inhabitants were forced to make terms before we arrived.

Exercise CCLXXXIX

1. I do not know what would have happened to him, had I not been present.
2. Ask your pupils to learn the lines I repeated to them.
3. Tell him they have not forgotten his kindness nor their own duty.
4. I swear to resist them as long as I live.
5. Let every man lift his own burden by his own efforts.
6. They hoped to capture the king while he was staying at my house.
7. There is no doubt that he would have done whatever you demanded.
8. You would have thought they could have prevented him whenever they wished.
9. See to it that they bring his books with them.
10. I know that I should have seemed proud, had I not accepted the gift.

Exercise CCXC

1. The wind was so strong that we could not have breathed, had we not turned round.
2. There is no doubt that many pupils would be sorry, if anyone found the lost books of Livy.
3. Although he cannot be present himself, he hopes they will report the plan to him.

4. He confessed he would not have married the woman, had she not been wealthy.
5. Tell me which of the two would have been blamed, had the slave died.
6. The priest urged the citizens to love each other.
7. What reason have you to think that you would have succeeded?
8. I should have liked him to do this of his own accord.
9. You would probably have understood this, if you had paid attention.
10. He said he would have washed his hands, if he had known you were here.

Exercise CCXCI

(Translate "Soldiers . . . unimpaired" first into *Orātiō Recta*, then into *Orātiō Obliqua*.)

Before the battle the Scottish chief assembled his troops, and encouraged them to show their accustomed bravery in the approaching crisis. "Soldiers," he said, "I have sworn either to return victorious this night, or to perish fighting among the thickest of the foe. Surely you have not forgotten how the Romans have treated our neighbours? The Scots have never yet experienced the yoke of slavery, nor learned to suffer the insults of a proud master. Moreover, we have no land to which we can retreat, and the Roman fleet rules the sea. Our hope of safety depends solely on our arms. Brave men will prefer to fight, and even cowards will find it the safest (course). The Romans are alone in an unknown land, incited by ambition and greed. Your wives are here to kindle your courage, your parents to blame you, if you hesitate, and nature has taught every man to strive with all his power to guard

what he holds most dear, his children, his friends, and his country. Advance then, soldiers! Let us sweep them from our shores for ever, and preserve our liberty unimpaired."

Exercise CCXCII

It is said that Themistocles sent a letter to the king of the Persians in the following terms (1. *Orātiō Recta*, 2. *Orātiō Oblīqua*): "I, Themistocles, have come to you, I who of all the Greeks have brought most misfortunes on your house, as long as it was necessary for me to wage war against your father and to defend my country. I also did still greater services to your father, after I was in safety and he began to be in peril: for when, after the battle of Salamis, he wished to return into Asia, I sent him a message that the bridge made over the Hellespont was on the point of being destroyed. By this information he was rescued from danger. Now, being driven from Greece, I have fled to you, seeking your friendship: if you grant me this, you will find me no less a faithful friend, than your father found me a brave enemy."

Exercise CCXCIII

After Augustus had dined, the prisoners were brought to his tent. Noticing Cinna among them, the Emperor ordered him to approach, and after gazing at him for a little with a harsh expression, he pretended to address him in angry words (1. *Orātiō Recta*, 2. *Orātiō Oblīqua*): "Cinna," he said, "have you forgotten my former kindness to you? Do you not remember that I spared you once when I found you in the enemy's camp? Though I pitied you then, you

determined to kill me. Deny it not, for I know where and when you intend to commit the murder and who your accomplices are. I have been wondering how to punish you as you deserve, and this is what I have decided. Live! I give you your life a second time. Let friendship join us together."

SECTION LXXVIII

The Roman Calendar

Years.—The Romans marked years by the Consuls :

E.g. Q. Fulviō, Ap. Claudiō Cōsulibus—In the Consulship of Quintus Fulvius and Appius Claudius;

but the historians sometimes also counted from the supposed date of the foundation of Rome :

E.g. ab urbe conditā (A.U.C.)—753 B.C.

Months.—From the reformation of the Calendar by Julius Caesar in 45 B.C. the Roman year had twelve months and three hundred and sixty-five days.

These were :—

Mēnsis.	Mēnsis.
Iānuārius (31 days).	Quīnctīlis, Iūlius (31 days).
Februārius (28-29 days).	Sextīlis, Augustus (31 days).
Martius (31 days).	September (30 days).
Aprīlis (30 days).	Octōber (31 days).
Māius (31 days).	November (30 days).
Iūnius (30 days).	December (31 days).

Note.—The names of the months are adjectives, the last four being declined like *acer*.

Days.—In every month there were three important dates:—

The Kalends—**Kalendae**, -ārum, *f. pl.*, the first day of the month.

The Nones—**Nōnae**, -ārum, *f. pl.*, the fifth day of the month.*

The Ides—**Idūs**, -uum, *f. pl.*, the thirteenth day of the month.*

A. If the required date is one of these three days the Ablative Case is used.

E.g. **Nōnīs Novembribus**—the fifth of November.

B. If the date required is the day before these three days **prīdiē**, “on the day before,” with the Accusative is used.

E.g. **Prīdiē Idūs Māiās**—the fourteenth of May.

C. All other dates were reckoned by taking the next following important date (Kalends, Nones or Ides) and expressing the number of days which separate the date required from the next important date, and counting backwards. The reckoning is inclusive, *i.e.*, both days are counted.

E.g. The **second of May** is calculated thus: The next important date is the **Nones** of May, the seventh. Both the seventh and the second are counted making six days in all, therefore the second of May is the sixth day before the Nones, *i.e.*, **ante diem sextum Nōnās Māiās** (*a.d. vi Nōn. Māi.*). Notice “ante” governs both “diem” and “Nōnās.”

Again, the **twenty-eighth of April** is calculated thus: The next important date is the Kalends of May.

* Except in the months of March, July, October and May when the Nones fell on the seventh day and the Ides on the fifteenth day.

Including the first of May and the twenty-eighth of April there are four days, therefore the **twenty-eighth of April** is in Latin, **ante diem quartum Kalendās Māiās** (a.d. iv Kal. Māi.).

Note these expressions are equivalent to a single word and can be governed by prepositions, *e.g.* From the twenty-eighth of April to the second of May —**ex** a.d. iv Kal. Māi. **ad** a.d. vi Non. Māi.

In leap years the twenty-fifth of February is repeated.

The twenty-fifth of February is **ante diem sextum Kalendās Martiās**.

The extra "twenty-fifth" was called **dies bissextus** and leap year itself called **annus bisextilis**.

The days were divided into twelve parts (**hora**) from sunrise to sunset, and the hours varied in length according to the season of the year.

Thus **tertia hōra**—"the third hour" corresponds to "9 a.m."

Some expressions of "time":—

tempus dūcere—to pass time.

tempus terere—to waste time.

temporis mōmentum, pūctum—a moment.

tempore—in time.

ad tempus—at the right time.

post hominum memoriam—within human memory.

biennium, triennium, quinquennium, etc.—a space of two, three, five years.

in diēs—from day to day (of something increasing or decreasing).

in diem dē diē differre—to postpone from day to day.

diēs nātālis—a birthday.

diem nātālem agere—to celebrate a birthday.

diēs festus—a day of celebration.

Exercise CCXCIV

1. My father will be seventy years old on the seventeenth of March.
2. The first theatre was built in Rome in 55 B.C.
3. These games were held for the first time in the consulship of Hirtius and Pansa.
4. Within human memory there has never been such a defeat.
5. The senate resolved to postpone the elections from the second of January to the fifteenth of February.
6. My friend fell ill on the thirteenth of June, and the fever grew daily worse, till finally he died on the ninth of July.
7. Your son has promised to stay with me from the sixteenth of October till the first of November.
8. Although he left Carthage on the second of May he has not yet reached Athens.
9. At nine o'clock this morning the letter was delivered to me.
10. Fifty-three years ago on the twenty-eighth of December the great bridge was destroyed by a storm of unusual violence.

Exercise CCXCV

1. I hope to build a great house some day, but meanwhile I shall be content to live here.
2. Some animals cannot see so well by day as they can by night.
3. I have often been a laughing-stock on the first of April.
4. At times I think my friend is purposely postponing his arrival from day to day.

5. I should like you to come to dinner on the ninth of March at six o'clock.
6. He will come home on the ninth of December to celebrate my birthday.
7. Hitherto we have had sufficient food, but I fear we cannot hold out till the fifteenth of March.
8. Though he was in command of the army for a period of three years, he never accomplished anything of importance.
9. It is said that some women eagerly await leap year.
10. Last year we spent the whole summer at my country house, which is not far from Baiae.

ADDITIONAL EXERCISES IN CONTINUOUS PROSE

Exercise CCXCVI

This queen had had a tomb built for herself above the most frequented gateway of the city and had ordered these words to be inscribed upon it: "If any of the kings who reign after me shall be in need of money, let him open my tomb and take therefrom as much as he desires; but unless he is in need, let him not open it, for he who opens it without cause will suffer great harm." No one disturbed the tomb until Darius succeeded to the throne. He thought it foolish not to use all the wealth stored there, and ordered the tomb to be opened, but found no money, only these words written: "If you were not the greediest of men, you would not have disturbed the resting-place of the dead."

Exercise CCXCVII

Herodotus has related many strange customs which the Babylonians used, and often praised them for the wisdom they showed. Now the Babylonians never called in a doctor, but, relying on the experience of their own citizens, placed the sick near the gates so that they might learn how to cure themselves from such of the passers-by as had been afflicted by similar diseases. Though Herodotus particularly approved of this method, I cannot help thinking that the sick people got better simply by entrusting themselves to Nature; for even if they had wished they could not have followed the advice of so many different people.

Exercise CCXCVIII

After dinner I learned many strange things from our host about the whale and the inhabitants of the island. The old man had long been at war with his neighbours, who were like fishes in appearance, but, as they had no weapons except fish bones, he had easily repulsed them hitherto. Next day, however, they intended to attack him with all their forces, so we promised to help him. When the enemy came in sight we advanced boldly, relying on our spears and swords, and soon put them to flight. So many were killed that the rest were compelled to surrender and beg for peace. After this victory we returned to the cottage and remained happily with our friends for two years.

Exercise CCXCIX

At last we were all weary of living in the whale's belly and eager to see again the lands and people we loved. We formed many plans and left no stone

unturned to find a way of getting out. First we tried to dig through the whale's side, but in vain. Then we set fire to the nearest trees, and soon the whole forest was blazing. For seven days and nights the whale remained unmoved by the heat, but on the eighth day he appeared to feel the flames a little, and on the twelfth day he was on the point of death. We then cut down a huge tree and dragged it to the whale's mouth and, as soon as the whale opened his mouth, we placed the tree between his jaws so that he could not close them and prevent us from escaping. Then we made ready our ship, pulled it through the gap between the whale's teeth, and lowered it into the sea. Thus freed at last from our strange prison, we thanked the gods, and joyfully set sail for Greece.

Exercise CCC

In this uproar Gracchus raised his hand to his head to indicate that his life was in danger. His enemies at once cried out that he was asking for a crown. The news was reported to the senate, and Nasica, rising, exclaimed, "The consul is betraying the public by his delay; let those who would save their country follow me." So saying, he rushed from the senate-house, and many of the senators followed him. They seized the benches which had been placed in the forum, broke them in pieces, and, armed with these weapons, charged the friends of Gracchus, who fled in panic.

Exercise CCCI

Gracchus himself attempted no resistance and made for the temple of Jupiter. But the priests had closed the doors, and, in his haste, he stumbled over a dead

body and fell to the ground. As he was rising one of his colleagues struck him with a stool. Others rushed upon him, and soon the tribune was overcome by many blows and lay dead before the statues of the ancient kings in the portico of the temple. Many of his adherents were slain along with him. Many were hurled over the Tarpeian rock. No fewer than three hundred perished in the fray.

Exercise CCCII

At sunrise we suddenly saw a great number of whales, of which the largest was one hundred and fifty miles long. We noticed that this whale was charging at us with open mouth, but we could do nothing to avoid destruction, so we said good-bye to our friends and waited his arrival. He reached us in a moment and swallowed the ship, but fortunately the gaps between the animal's teeth were so big that the ship passed through unharmed. At first we could see nothing on account of the darkness and sailed here and there like blind men in the whale's belly, but when he opened his mouth we noticed an island on the shores of which we beached the ship. The sea was full of fish, and there was abundance of fruit on the island, and, since we had brought sufficient fresh water in the ship, there was no danger that we should perish of hunger or thirst. Therefore we decided to wait patiently till the gods should grant us an opportunity of escape.

Exercise CCCIII

With seven of my companions I set out to discover the nature of the island, and we made our way through the dense forest until we reached a high hill from which

we hoped to see the whole district. On climbing to the top I saw smoke, and heard a dog barking, and then noticed a cottage hidden in the trees. We descended and hastened towards it. An old man and a youth were working in the garden and, on seeing us approach, they looked at us in silence for a long time, overcome with joy. Finally they asked us who we were and where we had come from. We told them everything, and the old man replied that ten years before the whale had destroyed his ship, and that only he himself and the youth had reached the island alive. Then, taking us into the cottage, they gave us food and wine.

Exercise CCCIV

About noon a great wind raised our ship into the air and drove it along for seven days and nights. On the eighth day we saw a huge island shining with a very bright light. We went ashore and found that the land was cultivated. By day nothing could be seen from this island, but by night we saw many islands not far off, like fire in colour. We started out to explore the island, but had not gone far when we met the Equitaves, as they were called, and were arrested immediately. These were soldiers mounted on large birds, whose duty it was to seize all strangers and bring them to the king. We were quickly taken to the palace, and when we told the king that we were Greeks and how we had come there, he replied, "Be not afraid, my friends. I shall give you everything you need. For I, too, am a human being. Many years ago I was carried off from your country and made king of this island, which we call the moon."

Exercise CCCV

For the second time a fierce battle was fought within the walls of Cremona. The victorious soldiers remembered that the citizens had sent supplies of food to their enemies in the former war, and that several women, drawn to the fighting-line by their excessive zeal, had been found among the slain. All were eager for revenge. Moreover it was known that the colony was wealthy, and that a vast crowd of merchants were present in the city to sell their goods at the fair. Incited by anger and hopes of plunder, the soldiers could hardly be restrained from sacking the city at once. All eyes were fixed on the general Antonius, but he gave no sign, and, wishing to remain neutral, retired to the baths. There, finding the water too cold, he casually said to the attendant, "It will soon be warm enough." His enemies afterwards declared that by this remark he gave the signal for the destruction of the city, for at that moment the fire began.

Exercise CCCVI

After reading the tales of the poets, I was eager to see the famous poplar trees, because I almost believed that I could become rich by gathering the tears of amber in the fold of my cloak. As we sailed upstream I could see neither trees nor amber, and at last I asked the boatmen if they knew where the trees were. The sailors laughed, and it was clear they did not know what I meant. So I told them the story: that Phaethon, the child of the sun, persuaded his father to allow him to drive the car for one day, but that he was thrown from the car and killed. That his sisters then came to the bank of this river, into which Phaethon fell, and mourned

for him so bitterly that they were changed into poplars. "They still weep for him and shed tears of amber," I said. The sailors looked at me in astonishment, and then one of them said, "Who told you that? We never saw anyone fall from a car, and there are no such poplars here. If there had been, we should have collected the amber ourselves and become rich long ago."

Exercise CCCVII

Though deceived in my hope of finding amber and ashamed of my stupidity, I thought I should hear that the other story was true. "Tell me, then, about your melodious swans," I asked. "At what time do they sing, and where can they be seen? The story goes that they were once the companions of Apollo, men gifted with lovely voices, who were changed into swans near this river. They never forgot their songs, and still continue to sing most sweetly." The sailors again laughed and said, "Somebody has been making fun of you, and telling you lies about our country. We have lived and worked here all our lives without yet hearing a musical swan. There are admittedly a few swans in the marshes, but they can utter only a croaking noise." On hearing this, I became silent and resolved never to trust the poets again.

Exercise CCCVIII

No man knew for certain that Otho was killed, yet all affirmed that the rumour was true. In this state of affairs, though ignorant what was happening and deceived by his friends, Galba determined to go forth from the palace. He called for his armour. The weight was too great for his weak body to support, and, oppressed

by the throng which surrounded him, he desired to be placed on a litter. Before he set out, a certain soldier called Atticus rushed up to him with a blood-stained sword in his hand and cried in a loud voice, "It was I who killed Otho." Galba calmly replied, "Who gave you orders?" Such was the courage of the emperor that even in the last extremity he wished to restrain the boldness of the soldiers. By their threats he was not perturbed; by their flattery never moved.

Exercise CCCIX

As soon as the legion came in sight, the standard-bearer of the cohort which still remained faithful to Galba tore from the standard the image of Galba, and threw it violently on the ground. At that signal the soldiers declared Otho emperor. The crowd fled, and the soldiers charged such as lingered with drawn sword. The men who were carrying Galba in the litter were struck with terror, and abandoned him near Lake Curtius. Some writers report that he begged his enemies to spare him, saying, "What harm have I done?" Others assure us that he offered his neck to the blow, and that his last words were "Strike, if it is for the good of the State." But it was of no importance to his enemies what he said or how he died, and it cannot now be known by whose hand the blow was given.

Exercise CCCX

One of the Spaniards who accompanied Cortez to America had a beautiful black horse, which he valued very highly, and, wishing to please the general, he gave him this horse as a gift. Not long after, while they

were hunting, the horse became so exhausted that it could proceed no further. However, since it was necessary to strike camp next day, Cortez was reluctantly compelled to leave the horse among the Indians, whom he ordered to look after it with the greatest care until he himself returned. The Indians, who had never seen a horse before, led him into their temple, decked him with garlands and offered him flowers and incense; for the horse seemed to them divine like his master, since he was accustomed to carry a god who could shoot lightning from a stick.

Exercise CCCXI

The poor horse, naturally, could not live on flowers and incense, and died of starvation within a few days. The Indians were terrified lest Cortez would accuse them of carelessness and punish them as he had threatened, so, on the advice of a priest, they built a great image of a horse and placed it in their temple. This statue the whole tribe worshipped as the god of lightning. Cortez himself never returned to the village, but more than a hundred years later two men, who were sent from Spain by the Roman priests to teach the natives, found the image and destroyed it. In a neighbouring temple they also found some bones carefully preserved, and the Indians informed them that these were the bones of a certain divine animal.

Exercise CCCXII

Philip, fearing that his son Carlos intended to kill him, silently entered his bedroom by night along with two others and removed the weapons which were lying

on the bed, without waking the sleeping youth. Indeed it was necessary to shake him violently before he could be roused. Then Carlos, starting suddenly from his sleep, and seeing his father standing before the bed, cried out that it was all over with him, and begged the bystanders to kill him without delay. But Philip assured him that he was not come to kill, but to recall him to his duty. He then admonished him severely, deprived him of his servants, and ordered his guards to convey him to prison.

Exercise CCCXIII

Carlos was now in despair, and repeatedly tried to take his own life. He threw himself into the fire, but was dragged out by the guards with all his clothes on fire. For eleven days he refused to eat any food, and was almost dead of starvation, and then ate so much that he fell seriously ill. It was said that he even tried to choke himself with a jewel. Philip, therefore, since his son was determined to die, thought it better to condemn him to death in accordance with the laws than to allow him to kill himself. Carlos was then compelled to drink poison mixed in a cup of wine by his father's orders, but his death was concealed from the people for several months, and not made public until their minds were occupied with the news of the victory won by the Spanish troops.

Exercise CCCXIV

The envoys from Africa had now reached Rome, when the consuls summoned the senate to the temple of Bellona. The leader of the embassy asked for an interview and the senators decided that nothing should

be done until they heard the Carthaginians. Conspicuous among the envoys was Hasdrubal, who had always been a promoter of peace. He addressed the Romans with great eloquence and skill. Everyone seemed greatly moved by his speech, but before he could finish, someone, who could not forget the treachery of the Carthaginians, asked if they could ever keep a promise. "By what gods will you swear to observe the treaty," he shouted, "since you deceived the gods by whom you formerly swore?" "By these same gods," replied Hasdrubal, "who have shown themselves so hostile to those who break treaties." On hearing this, the senate unanimously decreed that Scipio, in accordance with the proposal of the envoys, should make peace with the Carthaginians.

Exercise CCCXV

Postumius was about to lead his army through a vast forest. On either side of the road the Gauls had cut the trees in such a way that they would stand unmoved, but would fall if pushed. Postumius had two Roman legions, and had enrolled large forces of allies. When the column entered the pass, the Gauls pushed the nearest trees, and these struck the others, and all fell with a terrible crash upon the unwary men and horses. Then the armed Gauls came out of their ambush and massacred the soldiers, crushed by the weight of the tree-trunks or struggling among the thick branches. Scarcely ten Romans escaped. On the news of this disaster the citizens fell into such panic that the shops were closed, and all the streets were deserted. The senate ordered the aediles to go round the city and prohibit all signs of public sorrow.

Exercise CCCXVI

Phocion, though on the point of death, showed no sign of terror, but endeavoured to cheer the spirits of the other captives. When asked if he wished to send any message to his son, "Bid him," he said, "bear no grudge against the Athenians." It so happened that sufficient poison had not been prepared and, as it was necessary to obtain more, the greedy jailor demanded money to pay for it. Phocion thereupon told one of his friends to give the man what he needed, and remarked that in Athens it was impossible even to die free of charge. His friends did not dare to take part in the funeral, so his body was buried by hired slaves, and an unknown woman collected his bones. Not much later, however, the Athenians repented of their anger, and, remembering Phocion's virtues and kindness, sought for his bones, and brought them back to Athens. These were publicly interred, and a bronze statue was erected in his honour.

Exercise CCCXVII

I am glad you show in your letter how greatly you approve of what was done at Corfinium. I shall gladly follow your advice, and the more readily because I had resolved of my own accord to show myself as lenient as possible and to take care to win over Pompey. Let us try in this way (to see) if we may obtain the goodwill of all men and enjoy a lasting victory, since by cruelty the others were not able to escape hatred nor hold their victory long, except Sulla alone, whom I am not going to imitate. Let this be the new way of conquerors, to fortify ourselves by mercy and generosity.

Exercise CCCXVIII

Do not forget that you are Cicero, and one who has been accustomed to teach and give advice to others, and do not imitate bad doctors who, in the diseases of other people, profess that they have a knowledge of medicine, but who cannot cure themselves. Rather do you lay to heart the advice you are wont to give others. There is no pain which the passage of time will not assuage. But a man endowed with your wisdom ought to lay aside his grief at once. If the dead have any feeling, I know that your daughter will wish you not to mourn. Grant this to her, to your friends, and to your country, so that, if there is need, it may make use of your help and advice.

Exercise CCCXIX

Near this village once lived a certain peasant who was given to drunkenness. He wished, however, to be freed from this vice, and went to Rome to consult a very famous doctor. On hearing his story the doctor gave him a wine-jar and a great many pebbles. "You will soon discover," he said, "there is a wonderful virtue in these pebbles. You may drain the wine-jar every day, provided that you also throw in one pebble. When you have thrown them all in, I have no doubt that you will be cured." The peasant then went home and carefully followed these instructions. After throwing a pebble in every day, he found that he was drinking less and less wine, and to his surprise found also that he did not wish to drink more. Finally, before the jar was full of pebbles, he was quite cured, and never got drunk again.

Exercise CCCXX

The condemned were shut in prison, and their fathers and mothers passed the night before the gates in the hope that they might be allowed to hear the last words of their children. Shortly after the jailer, a lictor called Sextus, thinking it a good opportunity to make money out of the parents' grief, came out and demanded great rewards. "You will give so much to enter." "So much to take in food and clothing." "What will you give me to kill your son at one blow of the axe?" "How much that he may die without pain?" "That he may not be struck repeatedly?" The wretched parents were compelled to buy at great price, not the life of their children, but a speedy death, and the last request which the children made was that money should be given the lictor in order to alleviate their torture.

Exercise CCCXXI

I should like to mention a matter which afforded me no little consolation, (to see) if the same thing may diminish your grief. When I was sailing from Aegina towards Megara, I began to survey the regions round about. Behind me was Aegina, before me Megara, on my right hand the Piraeus, on my left Corinth. All these were once flourishing cities. Now they lie destroyed and in ruins. Thus I began to reflect. Are we puny men indignant if one of us dies, when the husks of so many towns lie abandoned before our eyes? You ought to restrain yourself, Servius, and remember that you were born a human being. Believe me, I was considerably strengthened by that thought, and I hope

it will console you too. If your daughter had not died then, she would nevertheless have had to die a few years later.

Exercise CCCXXII

My words are not studied, gentlemen, for virtue needs no ornament. Those who have something shameful to hide require the aid of art. I have not learned Greek, but this I have learned, which is of far more profit to the State, to strike our enemies, to defend our country, and to fear nothing except evil repute. With these precepts shall I encourage my soldiers, for it was in this way that our ancestors won glory for themselves and the State. They call me rough and unpolished because I do not grace their banquets. I am glad to confess it, gentlemen, since I have always understood from my parents and others that finery became women and work became men. Well then, be it so. Let them dine and drink and leave the dust and sweat to us who find more pleasure in the battle than in the banquet.

VOCABULARY

ABBREVIATIONS

abl. = ablative
acc. = accusative
adj. = adjective
adv. = adverb
c. = common
conj. = conjunction
dat. = dative
dep. = deponent
f. = feminine
fut. = future
gen. = genitive
impers. = impersonal
indec. = indeclinable
indic. = indicative
intrans. = intransitive
lit. = literally

m. = masculine
met. = metaphorical
mil. = military
n. = noun; neuter
neg. = negative
part. = participle
partit. = partitive
pl. = plural
prep. = preposition
pron. = pronoun
rel. = relative
sem. dep. = semi-deponent
subj. = subjunctive
subord. = subordinate
trans. = transitive
voc. = vocative

abandon, relinquiō, -ēre, reliquī,
 relictus; dēserō, -ēre, dēseruī,
 dēsertus

abandon (a siege), omittō, -ēre,
 omīsī, omissus

abide by, stō, -āre, stētī, stātūrus
 (*abl. or in with abl.*)

ability, ingenium, -iī (*n.*)

able (be), possum, posse, potuī

abound, abundō (1) (*abl.*)

about (concerning), dē, with
abl.

about (of number), circiter

about (of place), circum, with
acc.

above, super (*prep.*), with *acc.*;
 suprā (*adv.*)

absence, in my, mē absente

absent (be), absum, abesse, āfuī.

abundance, cōpia, -ae (*f.*)

accept, accipiō, -ēre, accēpi,
 acceptus

accompany, prōsequor, prōsequī,
 prōsecūtus (*dep.*)

accomplice, (sceleris) particeps,
 participis; cōnsciūs, -a, -um

accomplish, perficiō, -ēre,
 perfēcī, perfectus

accomplishing one's object,
 without, rē infectā

accord (of one's own), suā sponte
 (in) accordance (with), ex, with

abl.

accordingly, itaque

account (reckoning), ratiō,
 ratiōnis (*f.*)

account (give) (=relate), narrō
 (1)

account (give, render), ratiō-
 nem reddō (3)

(on) account (of), ob, with *acc.*;
 propter, with *acc.*

account (write), perscribō
 (3)

- accuse, accūsō (1); insimulō (1)
(falsely)
(the) accused, reus, reī (m.)
accustomed (am), solēō, solēre,
solitus (*sem. dep.*)
ace, be within an, minimē
abesse (quīn)
achievements, rēs gestae (*f. pl.*)
acquit, absolvō, -ēre, absolvi,
absolutus
across, trāns, with *acc.*
act (*n.*), factum, -ī (*n.*)
act (*v.*), faciō, -ēre, fēcī, factus
act (behave), mē gerō, -ēre,
gessi, gestus
actually, rē vērā
additional (fact is), accēdit
(*impers.*)
address (*v.*), adloquor, adloquī,
adlocūtus (*dep.*)
adherent, fautor, -ōris (m.)
admire, mīror (1) (*dep.*)
admit (allow in), intrōmittō,
-ēre, -mīsī, -missus
admittedly, sānē
admonish, moneō (2)
adorn, ōrnō (1)
advance (*v.*), prōgredior, prō-
gredi, prōgressus (*dep.*)
advanced in years, aetāte
prōvectus, -a, -um
advantage, bonum, -ī (*n.*)
adverse, adversus, -a, -um
adversity, rēs adversae (*f. pl.*)
advice, cōsilium, -iī (*n.*)
advice (on your), tē auctōre;
tē suādente
advise, moneō (2); suādeō, -ēre,
suāsī, suāsum (*dat.*)
aedile, aedilis, aedilis (m.)
Aegina, Aegīna, -ae (*f.*)
Aeneid, Aenēis, Aenēidos (*f.*)
Aesop, Aesōpus, -ī (*m.*)
affairs (state of), rēs, rērum
(*f. pl.*); status rērum
affect, afficiō, -ēre, affēcī, affectus
affirm, affirmō (1)
afflict, affligō, -ēre, afflīxī,
afflictus
afford (give), praebeō (2)
afraid (be), timeō (2)
Africa, Africa, -ae (*f.*)
Africanus, Africānus, -ī (*m.*)
after (*prep.*), post, with *acc.*
after (*conj.*), post quam, postea
quam, cum
afternoon, post merīdiem
afterwards, postea
again, rursus; iterum (a second
time)
again and again, identidem;
saepenumērō
against, contrā, with *acc.*; in,
with *acc.*
age (at the), nātus, -a, -um
age (old), senectūs, senectūtis
(*f.*)
ago, abhinc
agrees (everyone), inter omnēs
cōstat (*impers.*)
aid (*n.*), auxilium, -iī (*n.*)
air, āēr, āēris (m.); *acc.* āēra
alarm (*v.*), terreō (2)
Alexander, Alexander, -rī (*m.*)
Alexandria, Alexandria, -ae
(*f.*)
alike, eōdem modō
alive, vīvus, -a, -um
alive (be), vīvō, -ēre, vīxī,
vīctum
all, omnis, -e; tōtus, -a, -um,
gen. tōtius; cūctī, -ae, -a
(be) all over with, actum est
dē, with *abl.*
all sides (from), undique
all to a man, omnēs ad ūnum
alleviate, lēniō (4); molliō
(4)
allow, sinō, -ēre, sīvī, sītus;
patior, patī, passus (*dep.*);
concēdō, -ēre, concessī, con-
cessum
allow myself to, committō,
-ēre, -mīsī, -missus (ut)

- allowed (am), licet, licēre,
 licuit (*impers.*), with *dat.*
 ally, socius, -iī (*m.*)
 almost, paene; ferē
 alone, sōlus, -a, -um, *gen.*
 sōlius
 along (*prep.*), per, with *acc.*
 along with, cum, with *abl.*
 already, iam
 also, etiam, quōque
 altar, āra, -ae (*f.*)
 although, quamquam (*indic.*);
 quamvis, cum, quī (*subj.*)
 altogether, ūnō cōsēnsū;
 omnēs ad ūnum; ūniversī;
 simul (at the same time);
 omnīnō (entirely)
 always, semper
 amber, ēlectrum, -i (*n.*)
 ambition, glōriae cupīditās,
 cupīditātis (*f.*)
 ambitious, glōriae cupīdus, -a,
 -um
 ambush, insidiae, -ārum (*f. pl.*)
 America, America, -ae (*f.*)
 among, inter, with *acc.*; apud,
 with *acc.*
 amount, use quantus and
 subord. clause
 ancestors, māiōrēs, -um (*m. pl.*)
 ancient, antīquus, -a, -um
 and, et, ac, atque, -que
 and . . . not, nec, neque
 and . . . not (*joining commands*),
 nēve, neu
 anger, īra, -ae (*f.*)
 angry, īrātus, -a, -um
 angry (get), īrāscor, īrāscī,
 īrātus (*dep.*)
 animal, animal, animālis (*n.*)
 announce, nūntiō (1)
 annoy, laccessō, -ēre, laccessivī,
 laccessitus
 annoyed at, be, aegrē ferō, ferre,
 tūlī, lātus (*acc.*)
 annoying, molestus, -a, -um
 answer (*n.*), respōsum, -ī (*n.*)
 answer (*v.*), respondeō, -ēre,
 respondi, respōsus
 Antiochus, Antiochus, -ī (*m.*)
 antiquity, vetustās, vetustātis
 (*f.*)
 Antony, Antōnius, -iī (*m.*)
 anxiety, cūra, -ae (*f.*)
 anxiously, sollicitus, -a, -um
 (*adj.*)
 any, ūllus, -a, -um, *gen.* ūllius
 any you like, quīvis; quīlibet
 anyone (after, sī, num, nē);
 quis, quis, quid; quī, qua,
 quod (*adj.*)
 anyone (is there)? ecquis?
 ecquis? ecquid? num quis?
 num quid?
 anyone (after *neg.*), quisquam,
 quisquam, quidquam
 Apollo, Apollō, Apollinis (*m.*)
 appear (seem), videor, vidērī,
 vīsus (*dep.*)
 appear, appāreō (2); in cōn-
 spectum veniō (4)
 appearance, speciēs, -ēī (*f.*)
 applaud, laudō (1)
 applause, laus, laudis (*f.*)
 apple, mālum, -ī (*n.*)
 apple-tree, mālus, -ī (*f.*)
 appoint, creō (1); faciō, facēre,
 fēcī, factus
 approach (*n.*), aditus, -ūs (*m.*)
 approach (*v.*), appropinquō (1);
 adeō (4)
 approve of, probō (1)
 arise (spring up), orior, orīrī,
 ortus (*dep.*)
 arise (get up), surgō, -ēre,
 surrēxī, sūrrēctum
 Aristagoras, Aristāgorās, -ae
 (*m.*)
 arm, brachium, -iī (*n.*)
 armed, armātus, -a, -um
 armistice, indūtiae, -ārum (*f. pl.*)
 armour } arma, -ōrum (*n. pl.*)
 arms }
 arms, under, in armīs

- army, exercitus, -ūs (*m.*)
 arrest, comprehendō, -ēre,
 comprehendī, comprehēnsus
 arrival, adventus, -ūs (*m.*)
 arrive, adveniō, -īre, -vēnī,
 -ventum; perveniō
 arrogance, superbia, -ae (*f.*)
 arrow, sagitta, -ae (*f.*)
 art, ars, artis (*f.*)
 art (artifice), artificium, -iī (*n.*)
 Artemisium, Artemisium, -iī
 (*n.*)
 as (since), cum; quoniam
 as . . . as, tam . . . quam
 as . . . as possible, quam, *with*
 superlative
 as big as, tantus . . . quantus
 ascertain, cōgnōscō, -ēre, cōg-
 nōvī, cōgnītum
 as follows, haec (*n. pl.*); sic
 as if, quasi; tamquam (*sī*)
 as it were, ut ita dicam
 as like as, tālis . . . quālis;
 idem . . . atque
 as long as, tam diū . . . quam diū
 as much as, tantum . . .
 quantum
 (for) as much as (price), tantī
 . . . quantī
 as often as, quotiēscunque
 as soon as, cum primum;
 simul atque (*āc*)
 ascertain, cōgnōscō, -ēre,
 cōgnōvī, cōgnītus
 ashamed (*am*), (*inē*), pudet,
 pudēre, puduit (*impers.*)
 ashore (*go*), ē nāve ēgredior
 (*dep.*)
 Asia, Asia, -ae (*f.*)
 ask (*for*), rogō (*1*)
 asleep (*be*), dormiō (*4*)
 ass, asellus, -ī (*m.*)
 assemble (*trans.*), convōcō (*1*)
 assemble (*intrans.*), conveniō,
 -īre, -vēnī, -ventum; con-
 gredior, congregī, congressus
 (*dep.*)
 assembly, cōntiō, cōntiōnis (*f.*);
 cōncilium, -iī (*n.*)
 assistance, auxilium, -iī (*n.*)
 assuage, dēminuō, -ēre, -minuī,
 -minūtus
 assure, prōmittō, -ēre, prōmīsi,
 prōmissus; affirmō (*1*)
 astonished (in astonishment),
 attonitus, -a, -um
 at, in, with *abl.*
 at all, omnīnō
 at first, prīmō
 at hand (*be*), adsum, adesse,
 adfuī; praestō sum
 at home, domī
 at last, postrēmō
 at least, saltem
 at length, tandem
 at night, nocte, noctū
 at once, statim
 at the house of, apud, with *acc.*
 at times, interdum
 Athenian, Athēniēnsis, Athēni-
 ēnsis (*c.*)
 Athens, Athēnae, -ārum (*f. pl.*)
 athlete, āthlēta, -ae (*c.*)
 Athos, Athos (Athōnis) (*m.*)
 attack (*n.*), impetus, -ūs (*m.*)
 attack (*v.*), oppūgnō (*1*); aggre-
 dior, aggredī, aggressus (*dep.*);
 adorior, adorīrī, adortus (*dep.*);
 impetum faciō, in, with *acc.*
 attempt (*v.*), cōnor (*1*) (*dep.*)
 attendant, minister, ministri
 (*m.*); servus, -ī (*m.*)
 attended by, cum, with *abl.*
 attention (*pay*), operam dō,
 dāre, dēdī, dātus (*dat.*);
 studeō (*2*) (*dat.*)
 Atticus, Atticus, -ī (*m.*)
 attracted, adductus, -a, -um
 auction (*sell by*), sub hastā
 vēndō, -ēre, vēdidī, vēditus
 Augustus, Augustus, -ī (*m.*)
 Aulus, Aulus, -ī (*m.*)
 auspices (*under my*), auspice
 (*mē*)

authority (*n.*), auctōritās,
auctōritātis (*f.*)

authority (on my), auctōre (*mē*)
avenge, ulcīscor, ulcīscī, ultus
(*dep.*)

Aventine hill, mōns Aventīnus
avoid, vitō (1); *or use nē*

awake (*trans.*), excitō (1)

aware (be), sciō, scīre, scīvī,
scītum; sentiō, -īre, sēnsī,
sēnsus

away, be, absum, abesse, āfuī
away from, procul ā (*ab*), with
abl.

away with! (*v.*), aufer! tolle!
axe, secūris, -is (*f.*)

Babylonian, Babylōnius, -iī
(*m.*)

bachelor, caelebs, caelibis (*m.*)

bad, mālus, -a, -um

badly, mālē

baggage-animal, iūmentum, -ī
(*n.*)

Bagrada, Bagrada, -ae (*m.*)

Baiae, Baiae, -ārum (*f. pl.*)

bail (bring), vadimōnium, -iī
(*n.*) (*faciō*)

ball, pīla, -ae (*f.*)

banish, expellō, -ēre, expulī,
expulsus

bank, ripa, -ae (*f.*)

bankrupt, be, solvendō nōn
esse

banquet, epulae, -ārum (*f. pl.*)

barbarian, barbārus, -ī (*m.*)

bark (*v.*), latrō (1)

base, turpis, -e

bath, balneum, -ī (*n.*)

baths, balneae, -ārum (*f. pl.*)

battle, pūgna, -ae (*f.*); pro-
elium, -iī (*n.*)

battle (pitched), iūstum proe-
lium

battle (give), proelium com-
mittō, -ēre, -mīsī, -missus
(*cum*)

bay, sinus, -ūs (*m.*)

beach (*v.*), subdūco, -ēre, -dūxī,
-ductus

bear (carry), ferō, ferre, tūlī,
lātus; portō (1)

bear (endure), patior, patī,
passus (*dep.*)

beast (wild), fera, -ae (*f.*)

beautiful, pulcher, pulchra,
pulchrum

because, quia, quod

because of, ob, with *acc.*; prop-
ter, with *acc.*

become, fiō, fierī, factus; be-
come of, fiō (*abl.*)

becomes (it), decet, decēre,
dequit (*impers.*), with *acc.*

bed, lectus, -ī (*m.*)

bedroom, cubiculum, -ī (*n.*)

before (*prep.*), ante, with *acc.*

before (*adv.*), antea

before (*conj.*), ante quam; prius
quam

before long, haud multō pōst

beg (request) } orō (1)

beg for

beggar, mendīcus, -ī (*m.*)

begin, incipiō, -ēre, coepī,
coeptus

behalf of, on, prō, with *abl.*

behave (*mē*), gerō, -ēre, gessī,
gestus

behind (*prep.*), post, pōne, with
acc.

behind (from), ā tergō

believe, crēdō, -ēre, crēdidī,
crēditum (*dat.*); putō (1)

Bellona, Bellōna, -ae (*f.*)

belly, venter, ventris (*m.*)

belonging to another, aliēnus,
-a, -um

below, sub, with *abl.*, implying
"rest at"; sub, with *acc.*,

after a verb of motion:
īnfra, with *acc.*

bench, subsellium, -iī (*n.*)

bend, flectō, -ēre, flexī, flexus

- bend (*met.*), *mōveō*, -ēre, *mōvī*, *mōtus*
 beneath, sub, with *abl.*, implying "rest at"
 benefit (*v.*), *iuvō*, -āre, *iūvī*, *iūtus*; *ūsuī esse*, with *dat.*; *prōsum*, *prōdesse*, *prōfui* (*dat.*)
 bereft, *orbis*, -a, -um (*abl.*)
 beseech, *orō* (1) atque *obsecrō* (1)
 beside, *prope*, with *acc.*
 besides, *praeterea*; *porrō*
 besiege, *obsideō*, -ēre, *obsēdī*, *obsessus*
 best, *optimus*, -a, -um
 bestow, *dōnō* (1)
 betray, *prōdō*, -ēre, *prōdidī*, *prōditus*
 better, *melior*, *melius*, *gen. meliōris*
 better (it is), *praestat*, *praestāre*, *praestitit* (*impers.*)
 between, inter, with *acc.*
 beware, *caveō*, -ēre, *cāvī*, *cautus*
 bid (*v.*), *imperō* (1) (*dat.*); *iubeō*, -ēre, *iūssī*, *iūssus*
 big, *māgnus*, -a, -um
 bill, *rogātiō*, *rogātiōnis* (*f.*)
 bind, *alligō* (1); *vinciō*, -īre, *vīnxī*, *vinctus*
 bird, *avis*, *avis* (*f.*)
 birth, *lōcus*, -ī (*m.*); *genus*, *generis* (*n.*)
 birth (of noble), *nōbilī genere* *ortus*, -a, -um
 birthday, *diēs nātālis*
 bite (*v.*), *mordeō*, -ēre, *momordī*, *morsus*
 bitterly, *acerbē*; *vehementer*
 black, *niger*, *nigra*, *nigrum*
 blame (*n.*), *culpa*, -ae (*f.*)
 blame (*v.*), *culpō* (1)
 blazing (be), *ardeō*, -ēre, *arsī*, *arsum*
 blind, *caecus*, -a, -um
 blind of an eye, *alterō oculō* *captus*, -a, -um
 block (*v.*), *interclūdō*, -ēre, -clūsī, -clūsus
 blockade (*v.*), *obsideō*, -ēre, *obsēdī*, *obsessus*
 bloodstained, *cruentus*, -a, -um
 blow, *ictus*, -ūs, (*m.*)
 boast, *glōrior* (1) (*dep.*)
 boat, *scapha*, -ae (*f.*); *linter*, *lintris* (*f.*)
 boatman, *nauta*, -ae (*m.*)
 body, *corpus*, *corporis* (*n.*)
 body (dead), *cadāver*, *cadāveris* (*n.*)
 Bogen, *Bogen*, *Bogis* (*m.*)
 boldly, *audācter*
 boldness, *audācia*, -ae (*f.*)
 bone, *os*, *ossis* (*n.*)
 book, *liber*, *librī* (*m.*)
 booty, *praeda*, -ae (*f.*)
 bore, (*mē*) *taedet*, -ēre, *taeduit* (*impers.*)
 born (be), *nāscor*, *nāscī*, *nātus* (*dep.*)
 borrow, *mūtuor* (1) (*dep.*)
 both . . . and, *et* . . . *et*
 both, *uterque* (each of two), *utroque*, *utrumque*, *gen. utriusque*; *ambō* (both together)
 bottom of, *īmus*, -a, -um (*adj.*)
 bow (*n.*), *arcus*, -ūs (*m.*)
 boy, *puer*, *puerī* (*m.*)
 branch, *rāmus*, -ī (*m.*)
 brave, *fortis*, -e
 bravely, *fortiter*
 bravery, *virtūs*, *virtūtis* (*f.*)
 bread, *pānis*, *pānis* (*m.*)
 break, *frangō*-ēre, *frēgī*, *frāctus*; *rumpō*, -ēre, *rūpī*, *ruptus*
 break down (*trans.*), *inter-rumpō* (3)
 break in pieces, *confringō*, -ēre, -frēgī, -frāctus
 break word (promise, law), *violō* (1); *fidem fallō* (3)
 breaking law (without), *salvīs lēgibus*

breast-plate, *thōrāx*, *thōrācis* (*m.*); *lōrīca*, -ae (*f.*)

breathe, *spīrō* (1)

Brennus, *Brennus*, -ī (*m.*)

bribe (*n.*), *pecūnia*, -ae (*f.*)

bribe (*v.*), *corrumpō*, -ēre, *cor-rūpī*, *corruptus* (*pecūniā*)

bribery, *ambitus*, -ūs (*m.*)

bridge, *pōns*, *pontis* (*m.*)

bright, *clārus*, -a, -um

bring (carry), *portō* (1); *ferō*, *ferre*, *tūlī*, *lātus*

bring (lead), *dūcō*, -ēre, *dūxī*, *ductus*

bring about, *efficiō*, -ēre, *effēcī*, *effectus* (*ut*)

bring back, *redūcō*, -ēre, -*dūxī*, -*ductus*; (*word*), *nūntiō* (1)

Britain, *Britannia*, -ae (*f.*)

Briton, *Britannus*, -ī (*m.*)

bronze, *aes*, *aeris* (*n.*)

bronze (made of), *ex aere factus*, -a, -um

brother, *frāter*, *frātris* (*m.*)

bruise, *contundō*, -ēre, -*tudī*, *contūsus*

Brundisium, *Brundisium*, -ī (*n.*)

build (*n.*), *forma*, -ae (*f.*); *corpus*, *corporis* (*n.*)

build (*v.*), *aedificō* (1)

building, *aedificium*, -ī (*n.*)

bull, *taurus*, -ī (*m.*)

burden, *onus*, *oneris* (*n.*)

burn (*trans.*), *incendō*, -ēre, *incendī*, *incēnsus*; *ūro*, -ēre, *ussī*, *ustus*; (*intrans.*), *ārdeō* (2)

bury, *sepeliō*, -īre, -*ivī*, *sepultus*

business, *negōtium*, -ī (*n.*)

business (it is my), (*meā*) *interest*, *interesse*, *interfuit*; *rēfert*, -*ferre*, -*tūlit*

but, *sed*; *autem* (*after first word*)

but (except), *nīsī*

buy, *emō*, -ēre, *ēmī*, *emptus*

by, *ā*, *ab*, with *abl.*

by means of, per, with *acc.*

bystanders, *adstantēs*, -ium (*m. pl.*); *quī adstant*

by way of, per, with *acc.*

Caesar, *Caesar*, *Caesāris* (*m.*)

call, *vōcō* (1); *appellō* (1)

call in, *revōcō* (1)

call together, *convōcō* (1); *arcessō*, -ēre, *arcessivī*, *arcessitus*

calmly, *aequō animō*

Camillus, *Camillus*, -ī (*m.*)

camp, *castra*, *castrōrum* (*n. pl.*)

campaign, *stīpendium*, -ī (*n.*); *bellum*, -ī (*n.*)

can, *possum*, *posse*, *potuī*

candidate, be a, *petō*, -ēre, *petīvī*, (-*ī*), *petītus*

Cannae, *Cannae*, -ārum (*f. pl.*)

Cannae (battle of), *pūgna Can-nēnsis*

capable of, *capāx*, *capācis* (*gen.*)

Capitol, *Capitōlium*, -ī (*n.*)

captive, *captīvus*, -ī (*m.*)

capture, *capiō*, -ēre, *cēpī*, *captus*

Capua, *Capua*, -ae (*f.*)

car, *currus*, -ūs (*m.*)

care (*n.*), *cūra*, -ae (*f.*); *dīligentia*, -ae (*f.*)

care (nothing), *nihilī faciō*

care (a straw), *flocē faciō*

care (take), *cūrō* (1)

careful, *diligēns*, *gen. diligēntis*

carefully, *diligenter*

careless, *neglēgēns*, *gen. neglēgentis*

carelessly, *neglēgenter*

carelessness, *neglēgentia*, -ae (*f.*)

Carlos, *Carolus*, -ī (*m.*)

carry, *portō* (1); *ferō*, *ferre*; *tūlī*, *lātus*; *vehō*, -ēre, *vexī*, *vectus*

carry away, *auferō*, -*ferre*, *abstūlī*, *ablātus*

- carry off, rapiō, -ēre, rapuī, raptus
 carry off (kill), cōnsūmō, -ēre, cōnsūmpsī, cōnsūptus
 carry out (accomplish), perficiō, -ēre, perfēcī, perfectus; cōnficiō (3)
 Carthage, Carthāgō, Carthāginis (f.)
 Carthaginian, Carthāginiensis, -is (m.); Poēnus, -ī (m.)
 Casca, Casca, -ae (m.)
 Casilinum, Casilīnum, -ī (n.)
 cast, iaciō, -ēre, iēcī, iactus
 casually, fortē; cāsū; fortuitō; temerē
 catch, capiō, -ēre, cēpī, captus; captō (1)
 Catiline, Catilīna, -ae (m.)
 Cato, Catō, Catōnis (m.)
 cattle, pecus, pecōris (n.)
 cause (n.), causa, -ae (f.)
 cause (v.), efficiō, -ēre, effēcī, effectus
 cause (I am the), per mē stat, followed by *quōminus*
 cautious, cautus, -a, -um; prūdēns, *gen.* prūdētis
 cavalry, equitēs, -um (m. pl.); equitātus, -ūs (m.)
 cave, spēlunca, -ae (f.)
 cease, dēsistō, -ēre, dēstitī; dēsino, -ēre, dēsī
 celebrate, celebrō (1)
 censor, cēnsor, cēnsōris (m.)
 centre, *use* medius, -a, -um
 centurion, centuriō, centuriōnis (m.)
 certain (*adj.*), certus, -a, -um
 certain (for), prō certō (habēre)
 certain (a), quīdam, quaedam, quoddam
 certainly, certē
 chain, catēna, -ae (f.); vinculum, -ī (n.)
 chance (n.), occāsiō, occāsiōnis (f.)
 chance (by), cāsū; forte
 change (*trans.*), mūtō (1)
 character, indolēs, indolis (f.); mōrēs, mōrum (m. pl.); or *subord. clause* introduced by *quālis*
 characteristic, *use gen. case*
 charge (accusation) (n.), crīmen, crīminis (n.)
 charge (accuse) (v.), accūsō (1); īnsimulō (1)
 charge (attack) (n.), impetus, -ūs (m.)
 charge (make a), impetum faciō, -ēre, fēcī, factus
 charge (free of), grātis
 chariot, currus, -ūs (m.)
 cheaper, minōris
 cheaply, parvī
 cheat (v.), dēcipiō, -ēre, dēcēpī, dēceptus; fallō, -ēre, fefellī, falsus
 cheat of, fraudō (1) (*abl.*)
 check, impediō (4); moderor (1) (*dep.*) (*dat.*)
 cheer (v.), cōfirmō (1)
 chief (tain), prīnceps, prīncipis (m.)
 child, fīlius, -īī (m.); fīlia, -ae (f.)
 children, liberī, -ōrum (m. pl.)
 choke (*trans.*), suffocō (1)
 choose, dēligō, -ēre, dēlēgī, dēlectus
 Cicero, Cicerō, Cicerōnis (m.)
 Cimon, Cīmōn, Cīmōnis (m.)
 Cinna, Cinna, -ae (m.)
 circle, circulus, -ī (m.)
 citadel, arx, arcis (f.)
 citizen, cīvis, cīvis (c.)
 city, urbs, urbis (f.)
 civil war, bellum cīvīle
 clamour, clāmōr, clāmōris (m.)
 clear (*adj.*), clārus, -a, -um
 clear (v. *trans.*), liberō (1); excūsō (1)

clear, it is, appāret; manifestum est
 clearly, sine dubiō
 Cleomenes, Cleomenēs, -is (*m.*)
 clever, habilis, -e; sollers, *gen.* sollertis; perītus, -a, -um; callidus, -a, -um
 cliff, rūpēs, -is (*f.*)
 climb down, dēscendō, -ēre, dēscendī, dēscēsum
 climb out, ēgredior, ēgredī, ēgressus (*dep.*)
 climb up, mount, ascendō, -ēre, ascendī, ascēsum
 cloak (*n.*), paenula, -ae (*f.*)
 close (*v.*), claudō, -ēre, clausī, clausus
 clothe, vestiō (4); amīciō, -īre, amīcūī, amīctus; induō, -ēre, induī, indūtus
 clothes, vestīmentum, -ī (*n.*); vestis, vestis (*f.*)
 cloud, nūbēs, nūbis (*f.*)
 coast, litus, litōris (*n.*); ōra, -ae (*f.*)
 coat, lacerna, -ae (*f.*); paenula, -ae (*f.*)
 cohort, cohors, cohortis (*f.*)
 cold (*n.*), frīgus, frīgōris (*n.*)
 cold (*adj.*), frigidus, -a, -um
 collapse, collābor, collābī, collāpsus (*dep.*)
 colleague, collēga, -ae (*m.*)
 collect, colligō, -ēre, collēgī, collectus
 colony, colōnia, -ae (*f.*)
 colony, found, colōniam dēdūcō (3)
 colour, color, colōris (*m.*)
 column (military), āgmen, āgminis (*n.*)
 combatants, pūgnantēs, -ium (*m. pl.*)
 come, veniō, -īre, vērī, ventum
 come about, ēveniō (4)
 come back, redeō, -īre, -īī, -ītum

come forward, prōgredior, prōgredī, prōgressus (*dep.*)
 command, imperō (*dat.*) (1); iubeō, -ēre, iūssi, iūssus (*acc.*)
 command (be in), praesum, -esse, -fuī (*dat.*)
 commander (make), praeficiō, -ēre, -fēcī, -fectus (*acc. and dat.*)
 commit (crime), (scelus) admittō, -ēre, -mīsī, -missus
 common people, plēbs, plēbis (*f.*)
 companion, comes, comitis (*m.*)
 compel, cōgō, -ēre, cōēgī, cōāctus
 complain, queror, querī, questus (*dep.*)
 complaint, querimōnia, -ae (*f.*)
 complete (*v.*), cōficiō, -ēre, cōnfēcī, cōnfectus
 comrade, comes, comitis (*m.*)
 conceal, cēlō (1); tegō, -ēre, tēxī, tēctus
 concerns (it), interest, -esse, -fuit (*impers.*); rēfert, -ferre, -tūlit (*impers.*)
 condemn, damnō (1); condemnō (1)
 condemn to death, capitis damnō (1)
 conduct (*n.*), mōrēs, -um, (*m. pl.*)
 conduct (*v.*), dūcō (3); (affairs) gerō (3)
 conduct back, redūcō (3)
 confess, fateor, fatērī, fassus (*dep.*); cōnfiteor, -ērī, cōnfessus (*dep.*)
 congratulate, grātulor (1) (*dep.*) (*dat.*)
 connection with, use pertineō ad
 conquer, vincō, -ēre, vīcī, victus
 conqueror, victor, victōris (*m.*)
 consider (value), aestimō (1); habēō (2)
 consider, exīstimō (1)
 considerable, haud mediocris, -e

- considerable number**, nōn nullī, -ōrum (*m. pl.*); nōn nēmō; aliquot
considerably, nōn nihil; haud mediocriter; aliquantum
console, cōnsōlor (1) (*dep.*)
consolation, cōnsolātiō, cōnsolātiōnis (*f.*)
conspicuous, insīgnis, -e
conspiracy, cōniūrātiō, cōniūrātiōnis (*f.*)
conspirator, cōniūrātus, -ī (*m.*)
constitute, cōstituō, -ēre, cōstituī, cōstitutus
construct, aedificō (1)
consul, cōsul, cōsulis (*m.*)
consulship, cōsulātus, -ūs (*m.*)
consult, cōsulō, -ēre, cōsulūī, cōsultus (*acc.*)
consult (interest of), cōsulō (*dat.*)
consume (eat), comedō, -ēre, -ēdi, -ēsus
content, contentus, -a, -um (*abl.*)
continue, pergō, -ēre, perrēxī, perrēctus
contract (give a), lōcō (1)
contract (take a), condūcō (3)
contrary to, praeter, with *acc.*; contrā quam
contrive, efficiō, -ēre, effici, effectus
control, moderor (1); temperō (1)
convenient, it is, expedit (*impers.*)
conversation, sermō, sermōnis (*m.*)
convey, portō (1); vehō (3); dūcō (3)
convict, arguō, -ēre, arguī, argūtus
cook (*n.*), coquus, -ī (*m.*)
cook (*v.*), coquō, -ēre, coxī, coctus
Corcyra, Corcȳra, -ae (*f.*)
Corfinium, Corfīnium, -iī (*n.*)
Corinth, Corinthus, -ī (*f.*)
Corinthian, Corinthius, -iī (*m.*)
Coriolanus, Coriolānus, -ī (*m.*)
corn, frūmentum, -ī (*n.*)
corn supply, rēs frūmentāria (*f.*); annōna, -ae (*f.*)
Cornelius, Cornēlius, -iī (*m.*)
corrupt (*v.*), corrumpō, -ēre, corrūpī, corruptus
Cortez, Cortesius, -iī (*m.*)
cost (*v.*), stō, -āre, stētī, stātūrus
costly, pretiōsus, -a, -um
cottage, casa, -ae (*f.*)
count (value), habeō (2); aestimō (1); faciō (3)
count (number), numerō (1)
country (1) *earth*, terra, -ae (*f.*); (2) *native town, land*, patria, -ae; (3) *countryside*, rūs, rūris (*n.*)
country house, villa, -ae (*f.*)
countryman, cīvis, cīvis (*c.*)
courage, virtūs, virtūtis (*f.*)
course (hold), cursus, -ūs (*m.*); cursum teneō (2)
court (of law), iūdicium, -iī (*n.*)
cover, tegō, -ēre, tēxī, tēctus
covetousness, avāritia, -ae (*f.*)
cow, vacca, -ae (*f.*)
coward, ignāvus, -ī (*m.*)
cowardice, ignāvia, -ae (*f.*); sēgnitia, -ae (*f.*)
cowardly, ignāvus, -ī (*m.*)
craftsman, faber, fabrī (*m.*); artifex, artificis (*m.*)
crash (*n.*), fragor, fragōris (*m.*); strepitus, -ūs (*m.*)
crazy, insānus, -a, -um; mente captus; delīrus, -a, -um
Cremona, Cremōna, -ae (*f.*)
Crete, Crēta, -ae (*f.*)
crime, scelus, sceleris (*n.*)
crisis (time of), rerum discriminē, discriminis (*n.*)
croaking noise, strīdor, strīdōris (*m.*)

Croesus, Croesus, -ī (m.)
crop, seges, segetis (f.); frū-
menta, -ōrum (n. pl.)
cross (v.), trānseō, -īre, -iī, -ītus
crowd (n.), multitudō, multi-
tūdinis (f.)
crowded, frequēns, gen. fre-
quentis
crown (n.), corōna, -ae (f.);
diadēma, diadēmatis (n.)
cruel, crudēlis, -e; saevus, -a,
-um
cruelty, crudēlitās, crudēlitātis
(f.); saevitia, -ae (f.)
crush, comprimō, -ēre, -pressī,
-pressus
cry (n.), clāmōr, clāmōris (m.)
cry (cry out), clāmō (1);
exclāmō (1); (weep) lacrimō
(1)
cultivate, colō, -ēre, coluī,
cultus
cunning (adj.), callidus, -a,
-um
cup, pōculum, -ī (n.)
cure, sālō (1); medeor (2) (dat.)
Curio, Cūriō, Cūriōnis (m.)
current, flūmen, flūminis (n.)
Curtius, Curtius, -iī (m.)
custom, mōs, mōris (m.)
customary, mōris (est)
cut, caedō, -ēre, cecidī, caesus;
secō, -āre, secuī, sectus
(fut. part. secātūrus)
cut down, dēcīdō, -ēre, dēcīdī,
dēcīsus
cut off, abscīdō, -ēre, abscīdī,
abscīsus
dagger, sīca, -ae (f.); pugiō,
pugiōnis (m.)
daily, cottidiē; (increasing) in
diēs
daily, cottidiānus, -a, -um
damp, humidus, -a, -um
dance (v.), saltō (1); saliō, -īre,
saluī, saltum

danger, perīculum, -ī (n.)
dangerous, perīculōsus, -a, -um
dare, audeō, -ēre, ausus (sem.
dep.)
daring, audāx, gen. audācis
daring (n.), virtūs, virtūtis (f.)
dark (adj.), obscurus, -a, -um
dark, before, ante noctem
darkness, tenebrae, -ārum
(f. pl.)
dash (on to), illīdō, -ēre, illīsī,
illīsus, in with acc.; impellō,
-ēre, impūlī, impulsus, in
with acc.
date, use quandō with subord.
clause
daughter, filia, -ae (f.)
dawn, prīma lūx
day, diēs, diēī (m.)
day before (on), prīdiē
daybreak, at, prīma lūce
day (by), interdiū
day by day, de diē in diem; in
diēs
day (next), postrīdiē
day (previous), prīdiē
dead, mortuus, -a, -um
dead (the), inferī, -ōrum (m. pl.);
mortuī, -ōrum (m. pl.)
dead body, cadāver, cadāveris
(n.)
deaf, surdus, -a, -um; auribus
captus, -a, -um
deal, a great, multum
dear (at great price), māgnī
dear (beloved), cārus, -a, -um
death, mors, mortis (f.)
death (put to), necō (1); inter-
ficiō, -ēre, -fēcī, -fectus; occīdō,
-ēre, occīdī, occīsus
deathbed (on one's), moritūrus,
-a, -um
debate, dēlīberō (1); disputō
(1); cōsulō (3)
deceive, dēcipiō, -ēre, dēcēpī,
dēceptus; fallō, -ēre, fefellī,
falsus

- decide, statuō, -ēre, statuī, statūtus; cōstituō (3)
 deck (*v.*), ōrnō (1)
 declare, dēclārō (1); affirmō (1); dīcō (3); (*war*), indicō (3)
 decorate, ōrnō (1)
 decree (*v.*), dēcernō, -ēre, dēcrēvī, dēcrētus; placet, -ēre, placuit (*impers.*), with *dat.*
 deed, factum, -ī (*n.*)
 deep, altus, -a, -um
 deeply, graviter; vehementer; multum
 defeat (*n.*), clādēs, clādis (*f.*); incommodum, -ī (*n.*)
 defeat (*v.*), superō (1); vincō, -ēre, vicī, victus
 defence, praesidium, -iī (*n.*)
 defend, dēfendō, -ēre, dēfendī, dēfēnsus
 deflect, āvertō, -ēre, āvertī, āversus
 delay (*n.*), mōra, -ae (*f.*)
 delay (*v.*), mōror (1) (*dep.*); cūctor (*dep.*) (1)
 delay (*trans.*), dētineō (2)
 deliberate, dēliberō (1); cōsulō -ēre, cōsului, cōsultus
 delight, dēlectō (1)
 deliver, liberō (1)
 deliver (*letter*), reddō, -ēre, reddidī, redditus
 deliver (*speech*), ōrātiōnem habeō (2), apud, with *acc.*
 Delphi, Delphī, -ōrum (*m. pl.*)
 demand, postulō (1); pōscō, -ēre, popōscī
 Demosthenes, Dēmosthenēs, -is (*m.*)
 dense, dēnsus, -a, -um; frequēns; frequentissimus, -a, -um
 deny, negō (1)
 depart, discēdō, -ēre, discessī, discessum; abeō, -īre, -iī, -ītum
 depend on, pendeō, -ēre, pendī, -ē, ex, with *abl.*
 deposit, collocō (1); dēpōnō, -ēre, -posuī, -positus
 deprive, prīvō (1)
 depth, altitūdō, altitūdinis (*f.*); or use quot pedēs altus, -a, -um
 descend, dēscendō, -ēre, dēscendī, dēscēsum
 descended from, ortus, -a, -um (*abl.*); nātus, -a, -um (*abl.*)
 desert (*n.*), regiō dēserta (*f.*); loca dēserta (*n. pl.*)
 desert (*v.*), dēserō, -ēre, deseruī, dēsertus; relinqū, -ēre, relīquī, relictus
 deserted, dēsertus, -a, -um; relictus, -a, -um
 deserve, mereor (2) (*dep.*); or use dīgnus, -a, -um (*abl.*)
 design (*n.*), cōsiliū, -iī (*n.*)
 designedly, dē industriā, cōsultō
 desire (*v.*), cupiō, -ēre, cupī, cupītum
 desirous, cupidus, -a, -um
 desist, dēsistō, -ēre, dēstitī
 despair (to be in), dēspērō (1); animum dēmittō (3)
 despise, contemnō, -ēre, contempsī, contemptus; dēspiciō, -ēre, dēspexī, dēspectus; spernō, -ēre, sprēvī, sprētus
 destination, use quō with *subord. clause*
 destroy, dēleō, -ēre, dēlēvī, dēlētus; perdō, -ēre, perdidī, perditus
 destruction, exitium, -iī (*n.*)
 detain, impediō (4); retineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentus
 deter, dēterreo (2); impediō (4)
 determine, statuō, -ēre, statuī, statūtus; cōstituō (3)
 devise a plan, cōsiliū ineō, -īre, -iī, -ītus
 devoid of, vacuus, -a, -um (*abl.*)

- devote, dō (1); studeō (2)
(*dat.*)
- devoted to, studiōsus, -a, -um
(*gen.*); amāns, *gen.* amantis
- devour, dēvōrō (1)
- dictator, dictātor, dictātōris
(*m.*)
- die (*n.*), alea, -ae (*f.*)
- die (*v.*), morior, morī, mortuus
(*dep.*); *fut. part.* moriturus;
mortem obeō, -īre, -iī, -ītum
- different, dissimilis, -e; alius,
-a, -ud
- differently, aliter
- difficult, difficilis, -e
- difficulties (be in), labōrō (1)
- difficulty (with), vix; aegrē
- difficulty (without), nūllō
negōtiō
- dig, fodiō, -ēre, fōdī, fossus
- diligence, industria, -ae (*f.*)
- diligent, industrius, -a, um;
diligēns, *gen.* diligentis
- diligently, diligenter
- diminish, (dē)minuō, -ēre,
-minuī, -minūtus
- dine, cēnō (1); having dined,
cēnātus
- dinner, cēna, -ae (*f.*)
- Dionysius, Dionysius, -iī (*m.*)
- disadvantage, incommodum,
-ī (*n.*); dētrīmentum, -ī (*n.*)
- disaster, clādēs, -is (*f.*)
- discover, reperiō, -īre, repperī,
repertus; inveniō, -īre, invēnī,
inventus
- disease, morbus, -ī (*m.*)
- disembark (*trans.*), expōnō,
-ēre, -posuī, -positus; (*in-*
trans.) ē nāve ēgredior,
ēgredī, ēgressus (*dep.*)
- disgraceful, be, dēdecorī esse
- dishonour (*n.*), dēdecus, dēde-
coris (*n.*); opprobrium, -iī (*n.*)
- dismiss, dīmittō, -ēre, -mīsī,
-missus
- disobey, nōn pareō (2)
- dispense with, careō (2) (*abl.*)
- disperse, diffugiō, -ēre, diffūgī,
diffugitum
- display (make a), prae (mē),
ferō, ferre, tūlī, lātus; ostentō
(1)
- disposition, use quālis with
subord. clause
- dispute, disputō (1); (*verbis*)
contendō, -ēre, contendī,
contentus
- disregard, neglegō, -ēre, neglēxī,
neglēctus
- distance, spatium, -iī (*n.*); or
use quantum, etc., with
abesse
- distant (be), distō (1); or abesse
ā with *abl.*
- distant (*adj.*), longinquus, -a,
-um
- distress (*v.*), vexō (1)
- district, regiō, regiōnis (*f.*)
- disturb, perturbō (1)
- Diviciacus, Diviciacus, -ī (*m.*)
- divine, divīnus, -a, -um
- do, agō, -ēre, ēgī, āctus; faciō,
-ēre, fēcī, factus
- doctor, medicus, -ī (*m.*)
- document, liber, librī (*m.*)
- dog, canis, canis (*m.*), *gen. pl.*
canum
- door, iānuā, -ae (*f.*); ostium,
-ii (*n.*); porta, -ae (*f.*)
- doors (out of), (*rest at*), forīs;
(*motion to*) forās
- doubt (*n.*), dubium, -iī (*n.*)
- doubt (*v.*), dubitō (1)
- doubtful, anceps, *gen.* ancipitis;
dubius, -a, -um
- dove, columba, -ae (*f.*)
- down-hearted (be), animō dē-
missō esse
- down stream, secundō flūmine
- dozen, duodecim
- drag, trahō, -ēre, trāxī, trāctus
- drain (*v.*), hauriō, -īre, hausī,
haustus

- draw (drag), trahō (3); vehō (3); dūcō (3)
draw (attract), ēliciō, -ēre, ēlicuī, ēlicitus
draw (sword), ēdūcō (3); stringō, -ēre, strīnxī, strīctus
draw up, instruō, -ēre, instrūxī, instrūctus
draw (circle) round, circum-scribō, -ēre, -scripsī, -scriptus; (walls) cingō, -ēre, cīnxī, cinctus
dreadful, atrōx, *gen.* atrōcis
dream (*n.*), somnium, -iī (*n.*)
dream (*v.*), somniō (4)
dress (*n.*), vestis, vestis, (*f.*); vestīmentum, -ī (*n.*)
dress (*trans.*), vestiō (4); induō, -ēre, induī, indūtus
drink (*v.*), bibō, -ēre, bibī, pōtus; pōtō (1)
drive, pellō, -ēre, pepulī, pulsus
drive (control), moderor (1) (*dep.*); gubernō (1)
drive away out, expellō, -ēre, -pulī, -pulsus
drive back, repello, -ēre, reppulī, repulsus
drive on, impellō, -ēre, impulī, impulsus, in, with *acc.*
drown (*intrans.*), mergor, mergī, mersus (*dep.*)
drunk, ēbrius, -a, -um
drunk (get), ēbrius fiō, fierī, factus
drunkenness, use vīnum, -ī (*n.*)
due to . . . that not, per (me), stāre . . . quōminus
dumb, mūtus, -a, -um; ēlinguis, -e
during, inter, with *acc.*; per, with *acc.*
dust, pulvis, pulveris (*m.*)
duty, officium, -iī (*n.*); mūnus, mūneris (*n.*)
duty, do one's, officium praestō, praestāre, praestitī
dwell, habitō (1)
each, quisque, quidque
each of two, uterque, utraque, utrumque, *gen.* utriusque
each of two parties, utrīque
eager, cupidus, -a, -um; studiōsus, -a, -um; (keen), acer, acris, acre
eagerly, cupidē, studiōsē, (libenter)
ear, auris, auris (*f.*)
earth, terra, -ae (*f.*)
easily, facilē
easy, facilis, -e
eat, ēdō, -ēre, ēdī, ēsus; vēscor, vēscī (*dep.*) (*abl.*)
educate, doceō (2); (*bring up*) ēdūcō (1)
effect (*v.*), efficiō, -ēre, effēcī, effectus
effort (*n.*), nīsus, -ūs (*m.*)
effort, by, operā (meī, etc.)
effort (make an), cōnor (1) (*dep.*); nītor, nītī, nīsus (*dep.*)
egg, ovum, -ī (*n.*)
Egyptian, Aegyptius, -iī (*m.*)
eight, octō
eighteenth, duodēvicēsimus, -a, -um
eight hundred, octingentī, -ae, -a
eighth, octāvus, -a, -um
eighty, octōgintā
either . . . or, aut . . . aut; (*mutually exclusive*) vel . . . vel
either side (on), utrimque
elder, nātū māior
eldest, nātū mākīmus, -a, -um
elect, eligō, -ēre, ēlēgī, ēlectus
elections, comitia, -ōrum (*n. pl.*)
elements, rudīmenta, -ōrum (*n. pl.*)
eleven, ūndecim

- eloquence, facundia, -ae; ēloquentia, -ae (*f.*)
eloquent (wordy), cōpiōsus, -ā, -um; loquāx, *gen.* loquācis
else, alius, -a, aliud (*nothing else*, nihil aliud)
embark (*trans.*), impōnō, -ēre, -posuī, -positus (*in nāvem*); (*intrans.*), cōnscendō, -ēre, cōnscendī, cōnscēsum (*nāvem*)
embassy, lēgatiō, lēgatiōnis (*f.*)
embrace, amplector, amplectī, amplexus (*dep.*)
emperor, prīnceps, prīncipis (*m.*)
empire, rēgnum, -ī (*n.*)
empty of, vacuus, -a, -um (*abl.*)
encourage, hortor (1) (*dep.*)
end (*v.*), cōnficio, -ēre, cōnfēcī, cōnfectus; fīniō (4); (*intrans.*) finem habēō (2)
end of, extrēmus, -a, -um
endeavour, cōnor (1) (*dep.*)
endowed, praeditus, -a, -um (*abl.*)
endure, tolerō (1); ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus; patior, patī, passus (*dep.*)
enemy (personal), inimīcus, -ī (*m.*)
enemy (public), hostis, hostis (*m.*)
enjoy, fruor, fruī (fructus) (*dep.*) (*abl.*)
enlist (*intrans.*), nōmen dō, dāre, dēdī, dātus
enlist (*trans.*), cōnscrībō, -ēre, -scrīpsī, -scrīptus
enough, satis
enraged (*get*), irāscor, irāscī, irātus (*dep.*)
enrich, augeō, -ēre, auxī, auctus
enrol, *see* enlist
enter, intrō, (1); ineō, -īre, -iī, -ītum
enthusiasm, ardor, ardōris (*m.*); studium, -iī (*n.*)
enthusiastic, acer, acris, acre; studiōsus, -a, -um
entice, alliciō, -ēre, allexī, allectus
entrust, crēdō, -ēre, crēdidī, crēditum; mādō (1)
envoy, lēgātus, -ī (*m.*)
envy (*n.*), invidia, -ae (*f.*)
envy (*v.*), invidēō, -ēre, invīdī, invīsum
Ephesus, Ephesus, -ī (*m.*)
equal, pār (*gen.*) paris (*dat.*)
equanimity, aequus animus
equipped (lightly), expeditus, -a, -um
erect, aedificō (1)
err, errō (1); peccō (1)
escape (*n.*), fuga, ae (*f.*)
escape (*v.*), effugiō, -ēre, effūgī, effugitum (*acc.*)
escort (*v.*), prōsequor, -sequī, -secūtus (*dep.*)
especially, praesertim
establish, cōstituō, -ēre, cōstituī, cōstitutus
estate, fundus, -ī (*m.*)
esteem, aestimō (1)
Ethiopia, Aethiōpia, -ae (*f.*)
Eurymedon, Eurymedōn, Eurymedontis (*m.*)
eve of, be on, in eō esse, (*impers.*) ut
even, etiam
even if, etiam sī
evening, in the, vespere, vespērī
ever, unquam
ever (for), in aeternum
every, omnis, -e; quisque (*each*)
every day, cottidiē
every one, nēmō nōn
every side (on), undique; in omnibus partibus
everything, omnia (*n. pl.*)
everywhere, ubique
evident, manifestus, -a, -um

evil (*adj.*), *mālus*, -a, -um
 evils, *māla*, -ōrum (*n. pl.*)
 exact, *exigō*, -ēre, *exēgī*,
exāctus
 exactly like (*as*), *perinde ac*
 examine, *explōrō* (1)
 example, *exemplum*, -ī (*n.*)
 excel, *praestō*, -āre, *praestitī*
 excellent, *ēgregius*, -a, -um
 except, *nīsī*
 excessive, *nimius*, -a, -um
 excite, *excitō* (1)
 exclaim, *clāmō* (1); *exclāmō* (1)
 exertions, *opera*, -ae (*f.*)
 exhausted, *fatīgatus*, -a, -um;
cōnfectus, -a, -um
 exhort, *hortor* (1) (*dep.*)
 exile (*n.*), *exsilium*, -iī (*n.*)
 exile (*v.*), *expellō*, -ēre, -pūlī,
 -pulsus
 exit, *exitus*, -ūs (*m.*)
 expect, *expectō* (1)
 expedient (to be), *expedit*,
expedire, *expediit* (*impers.*)
 expedition (*mil.*), *expeditiō*,
expeditiōnis (*f.*); *iter*, *itineris*
(n.)
 expel, *expellō*, -ēre, -pūlī,
 -pulsus
 expense of State, *at*, *sūmptū*
publicō
 expensive, *pretiōsus*, -a, -um
 experience (*n.*), *perītia*, -ae (*f.*);
experientia, -ae (*f.*)
 experience (*v.*), *experior*, -īrī,
expertus (*dep.*)
 experienced, *perītus*, -a, -um
(gen.)
 experiment (make), *perīclitor*
 (1) (*dep.*)
 explain, *expōnō*, -ēre, -posuī,
 -positus; *doceō*, -ēre, *docuī*,
doctus
 explore, *explōrō* (1)
 exposed to, *obnoxius*, -a, -um
(dat.)
 expression, *voltus*, -ūs (*m.*)

extent (to such . . . that),
adeō . . . *ut*
 extent (*n.*), *use quantus*
 extinguish, *extinguō*, -ēre,
 -stīnxī, -stīnctus
 extol, *laudibus ēfferō*, -ferre,
extūlī, *ēlātus*
 extraordinary, *īnsolitus*, -a,
 -um; *mīrificus*, -a, -um
 extremity, *extrēmum rērum*
discrīmen, *discrīminis* (*n.*)
 eye, *oculus*, -ī (*m.*)
 Fabius, *Fabius*, -iī, (*m.*)
 Fabricius, *Fābricius*, -iī, (*m.*)
 face (*n.*), *voltus*, -ūs (*m.*)
 face (*v.*), *adeō*, -īre, *adiī*, *adītum*
 fact, an additional, *accēdit* (*ut*)
 fact (*in*), *rē vērā*
 fact, *rēs*, *reī* (*f.*)
 fail, *dēficiō*, -ēre, *dēfēcī*, *dē-*
fectum
 fair, *aequus*, -a, -um
 fair (*n.*), *nūndinae*, -ārum (*f. pl.*)
 faithful, *fidēlis*, -e; *fīdus*, -a,
 -um
 fall, *cadō*, -ēre, *cecidī*, *cāsum*
 fall asleep, *dormiō* (4)
 fall down, *dēcīdō*, -ēre, *dēcīdī*
 fall ill, *in morbum incīdō*, -ēre,
incīdī; *aegrōtō* (1)
 fall into } *incīdō*, -ēre, *incīdī*,
 fall upon } *in* with *acc.*
 false, *falsus*, -a, -um
 famous, *praeclārus*, -a, -um;
illustis, -e
 far, *longē*; *procul*
 far (= by much), *multō*
 far away (from), *ē longinquō*
 (so) far from that, *tantum*
abesse ut . . . *ut*; *adeō nōn*
 . . . *ut*
 farm, *fundus*, -ī (*m.*); *praedium*,
 -iī (*n.*)
 farmer, *agricola*, -ae (*m.*)
 fashion (*n.*), *modus*, -ī (*m.*)
 faster, *celerius*; *citius*

- fat, pinguis, -e
 father, pater, patris (*m.*)
 fatigue, lassitūdō, lassitūdinis (*f.*)
 fault (*n.*), culpa, -ae (*f.*); vitium, -iī, (*n.*)
 fault, it is my, per mē stat
 favour (*v.*), faveō, -ēre, fāvī, fautum (*dat.*)
 favourably, in locō idōneō
 favour of (*in*), prō, with *abl.*
 fear (*n.*), timor, timōris (*m.*); metus, -ūs (*m.*)
 fear (*v.*), timeō (2); vereor (2) (*dep.*); metuō, -ēre, metuī
 feed (*v.*), *trans.*, alō, -ēre, aluī, altum
 feed (*v.*), *intrans.*, vēscor, vēscī (*dep.*) (*abl.*); ēdō, -ēre ēdī, ēsum
 feel (mentally), sentiō, -īre, sēnsī, sēsum; percipiō, -ēre, percēpī, perceptus
 feeling, sēnsus, -ūs (*m.*)
 fellow, homō, hominis (*m.*)
 fellow citizen, cīvis, cīvis (*m.*)
 fever, febris, febris (*f.*)
 few, paucī, -ae, -a; nōn nēmō
 fewer (no . . . than), haud minus . . . quam
 field, ager, agrī (*m.*)
 fierce, ferōx, *gen.* ferōcis; saevus, -a, -um
 fifteen, quīndecim
 fifty, quīnquāgintā
 fight (*n.*) pūgna, -ae (*f.*)
 fight (*v.*), pūgnō (1)
 fighting-line, aciēs, aciēī (*f.*)
 fill, impleō, -ēre, implēvī, implētus
 finally, postrēmō
 find, inveniō, -īre, invēnī, inventus; reperiō, -īre, repperī, repertus
 find out, cōgnōscō, -ēre, cōgnōvī, cōgnītus
 fine (*n.*), multa, -ae (*f.*)
 fine (*v.*), multō (1)
 finery, munditiae, -ārum (*f. pl.*)
 finest, optimus, -a, -um
 finish, cōficiō, -ēre, cōfēcī, cōfectus; fīniō (4)
 fire, incendium, -iī (*n.*); ignis, ignis (*m.*)
 fire (be on), ardeō, -ēre, arsi, arsum
 first, prīmus, -a, -um; firstly, prīmum; at first, prīmō
 fish, piscis, piscis (*m.*)
 fist, pūgnus, -ī (*m.*)
 fit, idōneus, -a, -um; aptus, -a, -um (*dat.*, or *ad with acc.*)
 five, quīnque
 fix (eyes on), spectō (1)
 flag, vexillum, -ī (*n.*); signum, -ī (*n.*)
 flame, flamma, -ae (*f.*)
 flatter, adūlor (1) (*dep.*); blandior (4) (*dep.*)
 flattery, adūlātiō, adūlātiōnis (*f.*); blanditiae, -ārum (*f. pl.*)
 flee, fugiō, -ēre, fūgī, fugitum
 fleet, classis, classis (*f.*)
 flesh, carō, carnis (*f.*)
 flight, put to, fugō (1)
 fling, cōniciō, -ēre, cōnicēī, cōnietus
 float, innō (1); aqua sustineor (2)
 flock, grex, gregis (*m.*)
 flourishing, florentissimus, -a, -um; flōrens, *gen.* flōrentis
 flow with, abundō (1) (*abl.*)
 flower, flōs, flōris (*m.*)
 fly (*v.*), volitō (1); volō (1)
 foe, hostis, hostis (*m.*)
 fold (*n.*), sinus, -ūs (*m.*)
 follow, sequor, sequī, secūtus (*dep.*)
 following (words), haec (*n. pl.*)
 follows (it), sequitur ut
 follows (as), haec (*n. pl.*); sic; talia (*n. pl.*)
 folly, stultitia, -ae (*f.*)

- fond, amāns, *gen.* amantis ;
 studiōsus, -a, -um (*gen.*)
 food, cibus, -ī (*m.*) ; victus, -ūs
 (*m.*)
 fool, foolish, stultus, -a, -um
 foot, pēs, pedis (*m.*)
 foot (on), pedibus (*abl. pl.*)
 for (*conj.*), nam ; enim (*not first*
word)
 for (*prep.*), propter, ob, with
acc. (on account of)
 for (*prep.*), prō, with *abl.* (*on*
behalf of ; instead of)
 for as much as, quippe quī,
 quae, quod (*with subj.*)
 forager, pābulātor, pābulātōris
 (*m.*)
 forbid, vetō, -āre, vetuī, vetitus
 force (*n.*), vīs, vim, vī (*f.*)
 force (*v.*), cōgō, -ēre, cōgī,
 cōactus
 force open, excīdō, -ēre, excīdī,
 excisus
 forces (*n.*), cōpiae, -ārum (*f. pl.*)
 ford, vadum, -ī (*n.*)
 forefathers, māiōrēs, -um
 (*m. pl.*)
 foreign to, aliēnus, -a, -um (*abl.*)
 foresee, prōvideō, -ēre, prōvidī,
 prōvisus
 forest, silva, -ae (*f.*)
 forget, oblivīscor, oblivīscī,
 oblitus (*dep.*)
 forgetful, immemor, *gen.* im-
 memōris (*gen.*)
 forgive, ignōsco, -ēre, ignōvī,
 ignōtum (*dat.*) ; veniam dō (1)
 form (enrol), cōscribō, -ēre,
 -scripsī, -scriptus
 form (a plan), cōsiliū ineō,
 -ire, -iī, -itus ; cōsiliū
 capiō, -ēre, cēpī, captus
 former, prior, prius, *gen.* priōris
 formerly, ōlim ; quondam
 fort, castellum, -ī (*n.*) ; lōcus
 mūnītus
 fortify, mūniō (4)
 fortunate, fēlīx, *gen.* fēlicis ;
 beātus, -a, -um
 fortunately, peropportunē
 (accidit ut)
 fortune, fortūna, -ae (*f.*) ; sors,
 sortis (*f.*)
 forty, quadrāgintā
 forum, forum, -ī (*n.*)
 found, condō, -ēre, condidī
 conditus
 four, quattuor ; fourth, quartus,
 -a, -um
 France, Gallia, -ae (*f.*)
 fray, pūgna, -ae (*f.*) ; tumultus,
 -ūs (*m.*)
 free (*adj.*), liber, libera, liberum
 free (*v.*), liberō (1)
 free from, vacuus, -a, -um
 (*abl.*)
 free from blame, innocēns,
gen. innocentis
 free of charge, grātis
 freedom, libertās, libertātis
 (*f.*)
 freely, liberē
 frequented, frequēns, *gen.* fre-
 quentis ; celebr, celebris,
 celebre
 fresh, nōvus, -a, -um
 fresh (of water), dulcis, e.
 friend, amīcus, -ī (*m.*)
 friendly, be, familiāriter ūtor,
 ūtī, ūsus (*dep.*) (*abl.*)
 friendship, amīcitia, -ae (*f.*)
 frighten, terreō (2)
 frighten from, dēterreō (2)
 frivolity, levitās, levitātis (*f.*)
 from (out of) ē, ex, with *abl.* ;
 (down from) dē, with *abl.*
 fruit, frūctus, -ūs (*m.*)
 fulfil, cōficiō, -ēre, cōfēcī
 cōfectus ; exsequor, -sequī,
 -secūtus (*dep.*) ; faciō (3)
 full of, plēnus, -a, -um (*abl.*)
 full of (be), abundō (1) (*abl.*)
 fun (make of), lūdificor (1)
 (*dep.*)

funeral, exsequiae, -ārum
(*f. pl.*); fūnus, fūneris (*n.*)

funeral pile, rogos, -ī (*m.*)

furniture, supellēx, supellectilis (*f.*)

further (*adj.*), ulterior, ulterius,
gen. ulteriōris

further (*adv.*), ulterius, amplius

further (*conj.*), praetereā

gain (*n.*), lucrum, -ī (*n.*);
quaestus, -ūs (*m.*)

gain (obtain) (*v.*), adipīscor,
adipīscī, adeptus (*dep.*)

gain possession of, potior (4)
(*dep.*) (*abl.*)

gain request, impetrō (1)

Galba, Galba, -ae (*m.*)

game, lūdus, -ī (*m.*)

gap, intervallum, -ī (*n.*)

garden, hortus, -ī (*m.*)

garland, corōna, -ae (*f.*);
sertum, -ī (*n.*)

garrison, praesidium, -iī (*n.*)

gate, gateway, porta, -ae
(*f.*)

gather (*trans.*), convocō (1);
colligō (3)

gather (*intrans.*), conveniō,
-īre, -vēnī, -ventum

Gaul, Gallia, -ae (*f.*)

Gaul (*a.*), Gallus, -ī (*m.*)

gaze at, intueor (2)

general, dux, ducis (*m.*);
imperātor, imperātōris (*m.*)

generosity, liberālitās, liberālī-
tātis (*f.*)

gentlemen (of the jury), iūdicēs,
-um (*m. pl.*)

German, Germānus, -ī (*m.*)

Germany, Germānia, -ae (*f.*)

get, adipīscor, adipīscī, adeptus
(*dep.*)

get better, convalēscō, -ēre,
convaluī

get drunk, ēbrius fiō, fierī,
factus

get out, exeō, -īre, iī, -ītum;
ēgredior, ēgredi, ēgressus
(*dep.*)

get permission, licet (*impers.*)
(*dat.*)

get up (*intrans.*), surgō, -ēre,
surrēxī, surrēctus

gift (*n.*), dōnum, -ī (*n.*)

gift to (*v.*), dōnō (1)

gifted with, praeditus, -a, -um
(*abl.*)

girl, puella, -ae (*f.*)

give for (pay), emō, -ēre, emī,
emptus

give, dō, dare, dēdī, dātus

give back, reddō, -ēre, reddidī,
redditus

give up, trādō, -ēre, trādidī,
trāditus

give way, cēdō, -ēre, cessī,
cessum

glad (be), gaudeō, -ēre, gāvīsus
(*sem. dep.*)

gladly, libenter

glorious, praeclārus, -a, -um

glory, glōria, -ae (*f.*)

go, eō, īre, īvī, (iī), ītum

go away, abeō (4)

go forth { prōgredior prō-
(advance) { gredi, prōgressus
go on { (*dep.*)

go on (happen), agor (3); geror
(3)

go out, exeō, -īre, -iī, -ītum

go round, circumeō, -īre, -iī,
-ītum

god, deus, deī (*m.*)

goddess, dea, -ae (*f.*)

gold, aurum, -ī (*n.*)

good (*adj.*), bonus, -a, -um

good-bye (say), valedicō, -ēre,
-dixī, -dīctus

good of, be for, ūsuī esse (*dat.*)

goods, bona, -ōrum (*n. pl.*)

good-will, benevolentia, -ae (*f.*)

govern, praesum, praesesse,
praefuī (*dat.*)

- governor, praefectus, -ī (*m.*)
 Gracchus, Gracchus, -ī (*m.*)
 grace (*v.*), ōrnō (1)
 gradually, paulatim
 grandfather, avus, -ī (*m.*)
 grant, permittō, -ēre, -mīsi,
 -missus; dō, dare, dēdī, dātus
 granted that, ut (*concessive*)
 grasp (*n.*), manus, -ūs (*f.*)
 grasp (*v.*), corripō, -ēre, -ripuī,
 -reptus
 grass, herba, -ae (*f.*)
 gravity, (of situation), dis-
 crīmen, discriminis (*n.*)
 great, magnus, -a, -um
 greatly, magnōpere, valdē,
 vehementer
 greatness, magnitūdō, magni-
 tūdinis (*f.*), or use quantus
 with subord. clause
 Greece, Graecia, -ae (*f.*)
 greediness, avāritia, -ae (*f.*);
 cupīditās, cupīditatis (*f.*)
 greedy, avidus, -a, -um;
 cupidus, -a, -um; avārus, -a,
 -um
 Greek (a), Graecus, -a, -um
 Greek tongue, lingua Graeca
 Greek (speak, write) Graecē
 loquī, scribēre
 greet, salūto (1)
 grief, dolor, doloris (*m.*)
 grieved (be), doleō (2)
 ground, humus, -ī (*f.*); (place)
 locus, -ī (*m.*)
 ground (on the), humī
 grow (*intrans.*), crēscō, -ēre,
 crēvī, crētus
 grudge (bear a), invidēō, -ēre,
 -vīdī, -vīsus (*dat.*)
 guard (*n.*), custōs, custōdis (*m.*)
 guard (*v.*), custōdiō (4)
 guard (be on), in statīōne esse
 guard against (be on), caveō,
 -ēre, cāvī, cautus (*acc.*)
 guardian, custōs, custōdis (*m.*)
 guest, hospes, hospitis (*m.*)
 guide (*n.*), dux, ducis (*m.*)
 guide (*v.*), dūcō, -ēre, dūxī,
 ductus; (control) regō (3);
 gubernō (1)
 guiltless, innocēns, *gen.* inno-
 centis; īnsōns, *gen.* īnsontis
 guilty, nocēns, (*gen.*) nocentis;
 sōns, (*gen.*) sontis
 habit, mōs, mōris (*m.*)
 hail (*v.*), appellō (1)
 half, dīmidia pars (partis) (*f.*);
 dimidium, -ī (*n.*)
 half as big again, dīmidiō
 māior
 half the size, dīmidiō minor
 halt, cōsistō, -ēre, cōstitī
 hand, manus, -ūs (*f.*)
 hand, be at, adsum, adesse,
 adfuī
 hand over, trādō, -ēre, trādīdī,
 trādītus
 handsome, pulcher, pulchra,
 pulchrum
 hang (*intrans.*), pendeō, -ēre,
 pependī
 Hannibal, Hannibal, Hannibālis
 (*m.*)
 happen, eveniō, -īre, -vēnī,
 -ventum; accidit (*impers.*)
 happily, fēliciter; peropportūnē
 happy, beātus, -a, -um; fēlix,
gen. fēlicis
 harass, laccessō, -ēre, laccessīvī,
 laccessitus
 harbour, portus, -ūs (*m.*)
 hard (*adj.*), durus, -a, -um
 hard (difficult), difficilis, -e
 hard (*adv.*), diligenter
 hardly, vix; aegrē
 harm (do), noceō (2) (*dat.*);
 laedō, -ēre, laesī, laesus
 harsh, sevērus, -a, -um
 harvest, seges, segetis (*f.*)
 Hasdrubal, Hasdrubal, Hasdru-
 bālis (*m.*)

- haste (*n.*), celeritās, celeritātis (*f.*)
 haste (*v.*), *see* hasten
 hasten, festīno (1); mātūrō (1); contendō, -ēre, contendī
 hastily, cōnfestim
 hate, ōdī, ōdisse
 hated, hateful (*be*), ōdiō esse, with *dat.*
 hatred, ōdium, -iī (*n.*)
 head, caput, capitis (*n.*)
 heal, sārō (1); medeor (2) (*dep.*) (*dat.*)
 health, valētūdō, valētūdinis (*f.*)
 hear, audiō (4)
 hearing (without a), rē inaudītā
 heart (lay to), studeō (2) (*dat.*)
 heat, (*n.*), calor, calōris (*m.*)
 heavy, gravis, grave
 heed (pay), operam dāre (*dat.*)
 height, altitūdō, altitūdinis (*f.*)
 heights, montēs, -ium (*m. pl.*)
 Hellespont, Hellespontus, -ī (*m.*)
 helmet, galea, -ae (*f.*)
 help (*n.*), auxiliū, -iī (*n.*)
 help (*v.*), adiuvō, -āre, adiūvī, adiūtus; succurrō, -ēre, succurrī, succursum (*dat.*); subveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum (*dat.*)
 help (cannot), facere nōn possum (*quīn*)
 here, hīc
 here (hither), hūc
 here and there, hūc illūc
 here (to be), adsum, adesse, adfuī
 Herodotus, Herodotus, -ī (*m.*)
 hesitate, dubitō (1)
 hesitation, dubium, -iī (*n.*); dubitātiō, dubitātiōnis (*f.*)
 hide (*n.*), pellis, pellis (*f.*)
 hide (*trans.*), cēlō (1); abdō, -ēre, abdidī, abditus; (*intrans.*) lateō (2)
 hiding-place, latebrae, -ārum (*f. pl.*)
 high, altus, -a, -um
 highest, altissimus, -a, -um; summus, -a, -um
 highly (value), māgnī
 hill, collis, collis (*m.*)
 hill-tops, summī collēs
 himself, ipse, ipsa, ipsum
 hinder, impediō (4)
 hindrance, impedimentum, -ī (*n.*)
 hire, condūcō, -ēre, -dūxī, -dūctus
 Hirtius, Hirtius, -iī (*m.*)
 his men, suī, suōrum (*m. pl.*)
 his own, her own, its own, suus, -a, -um
 hitherto, adhūc
 hold, teneō, -ēre, tenuī, tentum
 hold (think), dūcō (3)
 hold a court (law), sedcō, -ēre, sēdī, sessum
 hold a course, cursum tenēre
 hold out (*intrans.*), resistō, -ēre, restitī
 hold out (*trans.*), porrigō, -ēre, porrēxī, porrēctus
 holiday, diēs festus
 holidays, fēriae, -ārum (*f. pl.*)
 holy, sanctus, -a, -um; sacer, sacra, sacrum
 home (-wards), domum
 home, at, domī
 honest, probus, -a, -um
 honey, mel, mellis (*n.*)
 honour (*n.*) (*distinction*), honōs, honōris (*m.*); (*faith*), fidēs, -eī (*f.*)
 honour (*v.*), ōrnō (1)
 honour of (in), honōris causā
 hope (*n.*), spēs, speī (*f.*)
 hope (*v.*), spērō (1)
 Horatius, Horātius, -iī
 horn, cornū, -ūs (*n.*)
 horse, equus, -ī (*m.*)
 horseman, eques, equitis (*m.*)

- host (of guests), hospes, hospitis (m.)
 hostage, obses, obsidis (m.)
 hostile, infensus, -a, -um
 hot, calidus, -a, -um
 hour, hōra, -ae (f.)
 house, domus, -ūs (f.); aedēs, -ium (f. pl.)
 house of, (at), apud, with acc.
 household, familia, -ae (f.)
 how? quō modō?
 how big? quantus, -a, -um?
 however, quamvis
 however (conj.), tamen
 how few, quōtus quisque
 how long? quam diū?
 how many? quot?
 how many times? quotiens?
 how much? (quantity), quantus? -a? -um?
 how much (value)? quanti?
 how often? quotiens?
 how old? (of a person), quot annōs nātus?
 huge, ingēns, gen. ingentis
 human, hūmānus, -a, -um
 human being, homo, hominis (c.)
 humble, humilis, humile
 hundred, centum
 hunger, famēs, famis (f.)
 hunt (v.), vēnor (1) (dep.)
 hunter, vēnātor, vēnātōris (m.)
 hurl, cōniciō, -ēre, cōniēcī, cōniectus
 hurriedly, cōnfestim
 hurry, see hasten
 hurt, laedō, -ēre, laesī, laesus; noceō, -ēre, nocuī (dat.)
 hurtful, noxius, -a, -um
 hurtful to, be, noceō (2) (dat.)
 husband, marītus, -ī (m.); vir, virī (m.)
 husk (met.), cadāver, cadāveris (n.)
 idle (v.), cessō (1)
 idle (adj.), ignāvus, -a, -um
 idleness, ignāvia, -ae (f.)
 if, sī
 if not (unless), nīsī
 if (whether), num
 if only! utinam! (subj.)
 ignorant, īncius, -a, -um; ignārus, -a, -um
 ill, aeger, aegra, aegrum
 ill-health, aegritūdō, aegritūdinis (f.)
 illness, morbus, -ī (m.)
 image, imāgō, imāginis (f.)
 imagine, animō concipiō, -ēre, -cēpī, -ceptus
 imitate, imitor (1)
 immediately, statim
 immortal, immortalis, -e
 implicated in, particeps, participis (gen.)
 implore, orō atque obsecrō
 importance (be of) } interest, interesse,
 important (to be) } interfuit; refert (impers).
 important (adj.), gravis, -e
 impossible, see Sect. XLV.
 imprison, in vincula cōniciō
 impute, vertō, -ere, vērtī, versus
 in (a place), in, with abl.; in (an author) apud, with acc.
 inasmuch as, quippe (quī) (subj.)
 incapable, aliēnus (ā with abl.)
 incense, tūs, tūris (n.)
 incite, adducō, -ēre, -dūxī, -ductus
 inclined to believe, haud sciō an; nesciō an
 inconsistent with, aliēnus (ā with abl.)
 increase (trans.), augeō, -ēre, auxī, auctus
 increase (intrans.), crēscō, -ēre, crēvī, crētus
 Indian, Indus, -ī (m.)

- indicate, mōnstrō (1)
 indignant (be), indīgnor (1)
 (dep.); aegrē ferō, ferre, tūlī,
 lātus, *acc.*
 indignation, ira, -ae (f.); dolor,
 dolōris (m.)
 indoors, domī
 indulge, indulgeō, -ēre, indulsī
 (dat.)
 inexperience, imperītia, -ae
 (f.)
 inexperienced, imperītus, -a,
 -um
 infantry, equitēs, -um (m. pl.);
 equitātus, -ūs (m.)
 influence (n.), grātia, -ae (f.)
 influence (v.), moveō, -ēre, mōvī,
 mōtus
 inform, certiōrem faciō (3)
 information, nūntius, -iī (m.)
 informed (be), certior fīō
 inhabitant, incola, -ae (c.)
 injure, laedō, -ēre, laesī, laesus;
 noceō, -ēre, nocuī (dat.)
 injury, iniūria, -ae (f.);
 damnum, -ī (n.)
 injustice, inīquitās, inīquitātis
 (f.)
 inn, deversōrium, -iī (n.)
 innocent, innocēns, *gen.* inno-
 centis; insōns, *gen.* insontis
 inquire, rogō (1); quaerō, -ēre,
 quaesivī, quaesītus
 inscribe, inscribō, -ēre, inscripsī,
 inscriptus
 insistence (with), *use* instō, -āre,
 institi
 insolence, superbia, -ae (f.);
 arrogantia, -ae (f.); audācia,
 -ae (f.)
 in spite of (although), quam-
 quam, with *indic.*
 instead of, prō, with *abl.* See
 also Sect. XLV.
 instigation (at my), (mē),
 auctōre
 instigation, at your, tē auctōre
 instruction (order), mandātum,
 -ī (n.); iūssum, -ī (n.)
 instructions (give), imperō (1)
 (dat.); iubeō, -ēre, iūssī, iūssus
 insult (n.), contumēlia, -ae (f.)
 insult (v.), contumēliās impōnō
 (dat.), -ēre, -posuī, -positus
 integrity, probitās, probitātis
 (f.)
 intelligence, mēns, mentis (f.);
 ingenium, -iī (n.)
 intend, in animō habeō (2)
 intense, ingēns, *gen.* ingentis
 intent (be), operam dō, studeō
 (2) (dat.)
 intention, with the, eō cōsiliō
 ut
 interest (be to one's), interest,
 interesse, interfuit; rēfert
 interrupt, interpellō (1)
 interview (ask for), senātum
 rogō (1)
 intimate terms (be on),
 familiāriter ūtor, ūtī, ūsus
 (dep.) (*abl.*)
 into, in, with *acc.*
 inured to, patiēns, *gen.*
 patientis (*gen.*)
 invade, invādō, -ēre, invāsī,
 invāsum in, with *acc.*
 in vain, frūstrā
 invest (blockade), obsideō, -ēre,
 obsēdī, obsessus
 invite, invitō (1)
 involved, *use* versor (1) (*dep.*)
 irksome, molestus, -a, -um
 island, insula, -ae (f.)
 Italy, Italia, -ae (f.)
 jailer, custōs, custōdis (m.)
 javelin, iaculum, -ī (n.)
 jaw, māla, -ae (f.)
 jewel, gemma, -ae (f.)
 join { cōniungō, -ēre,
 join together { cōniūnxī, cōn-
 iūctus (*trans.*)
 joke (n.), iocus, -ī (m.)

- joy, gaudium, -iī (*n.*)
 joyfully, cum gaudiō
 judge (*n.*), iūdex, iūdicis (*m.*)
 jump down, dēsiliō, -ire, dēsilui,
 dēsultum
 jump in, insiliō, -ire, insilui,
 insultum
 Juno, Iūnō, Iūnōnis (*f.*)
 Jupiter, Iuppiter, Iovis (*m.*)
 jury, iūdicēs, -um (*m. pl.*)
 just as, pariter ac; tamquam si

 keen, acer, acris, acre
 keep (maintain), alō, -ēre, alui,
 altum
 keep (preserve), cōservō (1)
 keep (ranks), observō (1)
 keep (a promise), praestō, -āre,
 praestitī
 keep from, arceō (2) (ab with
 abl.); dēterreō (2) (quōminus)
 keep in dark, aliquem dē aliquā
 rē cēlō (1)
 keep out, exclūdō, -ēre, exclusi,
 exclusus
 keep silent, taceō (2)
 kill, necō (1); interficiō, -ēre,
 interfēcī, interfectus; occidō,
 -ēre, occidī, occisus
 kind (*n.*), genus, generis (*n.*)
 kind? what? quālis? quāle?
 kindle, incendō, -ēre, incendiī,
 incēnsus
 kindly (*adj.*), benīgnus, -a, -um
 kindness, benevolentia, -ae (*f.*)
 kindness (*a.*), beneficium, -iī (*n.*)
 king, rex, rēgis (*m.*)
 knave, scelestus, -a, -um
 knife, culter, -rī (*m.*)
 knight, eques, equitis (*m.*)
 know (*a fact*), sciō (4); (*person*),
 nōvī, nōvisse
 know, get to, nōscō, -ēre
 know how to, sciō (4), with *infin.*
 know (not to), nesciō (4)
 know (not to . . . how), nesciō
 (4), with *infin.*

 known to, nōtus, -a, -um
 known, it is well, cōstat
 (*impers.*)
 knowledge (without), inscius,
 -a, -um
 knowledge, to have, peritus
 esse (*gen.*)

 Labienus, Labiēnus, -ī (*m.*)
 lack (*n.*), inōpia, -ae (*f.*)
 lack of success (with), rē infectā
 Laconia, Lacōnia, -ae (*f.*)
 ladder, scālae, -ārum (*f. pl.*)
 laden, onustus, -a, -um
 lake, lacus, -ūs (*m.*)
 lame, claudus, -a, -um
 lamp, lucerna, -ae (*f.*)
 lance, hasta, -ae (*f.*)
 land (*n.*), terra, -ae (*f.*); ager,
 agrī (*m.*)
 land (native), patria, -ae (*f.*)
 land (*v.*) *trans.*, expōnō, -ēre,
 -posuī, -positus
 land (*v.*), *intrans.*, ēgredior,
 ēgredī, ēgressus (*dep.*)
 large, māgnus, -a, -um
 last (*adj.*), ultimus, -a, -um
 last (at), tandem
 lasting, diūturnus, -a, -um
 late (*adj.*), sērus, -a, -um; (*adv.*),
 sērō.
 lately, nūper
 later, postea; post
 later (not much), haud multō
 post
 Latin (speak, write), Latīnē
 loquī, scribere
 latter, the, hīc, haec, hōc
 laugh (*v.*), rīdeō, -ēre, rīsī, rīsum
 laugh at, irrīdeō (2) (*dat.*)
 laughing-stock, lūdibrium, -iī
 (*n.*)
 launch (a ship), dēdūcō, -ēre,
 -dūxī, -ductus
 law, lēx, lēgis (*f.*)
 lawful (it is), licet (2) (*impers.*),
 (*dat.*); fās est

- lawsuit, *līs, lītis (f.)*; causa, -ae (f.)
 lay (aside, down), *dēpōnō, -ēre, -posuī, -positus*
 lay waste, *vastō (1)*
 lay to heart, in *animō condō*
 laziness, *ignāvia, -ae (f.)*
 lazy, *ignāvus, -a, -um*
 lead, *dūcō, -ēre, dūxī, ductus*; (of a road) *ferō, ferre, tūli, lātus*
 lead across, *trādūcō (3)*
 lead away, *abdūcō (3)*
 lead out, *ēdūcō (3)*
 leader (military), *dux, dūcis (m.)*
 leader (of an embassy), *prīnceps, prīncipis (m.)*
 leaf, *folium, -iī (n.)*
 leap (v.), *salīō, -īre, saluī, saltum*
 leap in, *insiliō (4)*
 leap-year, *annus bisextilis*
 learn, *discō, -ēre, didici*; (find out) *cōgnōscō, -ēre, cōgnōvī, cōgnītus*
 learned, *doctus, -a, -um*
 leave (trans.), *relinquō, -ēre, reliquī, relictus*
 leave (intrans.), *abeō (4)*; *discēdō, -ēre, discessī, discessūrus*
 leave (by your), *pāce tuā*
 leave nothing undone, } *id agō (ut)*
 leave no stone unturned, }
 left (hand) on, *sinistrā*; ā *sinistrā*
 leg, *crūs, crūris (n.)*
 legion, *legiō, legiōnis (f.)*
 leisure, *ōtium, -iī (n.)*
 leisure (have), *ōtium agō, -ēre, ēgī, āctus*; *vacō (1) (abl.)*
 length (at), *tandem*
 lenient, *mītis, -e*
 less, *minus*
 lest, *nē*
 let (allow), *sinō, -ēre, sīvī, sītum*
 let pass, *omittō, -ēre, omisi, omissus*
 letter (epistle), *epistula, -ae (f.)*; *litterae, -ārum (f. pl.)*
 levy, *dēlectus, -ūs (m.)*
 levy (to), *dēlectum habēre*
 liable, *obnoxius, -a, -um (dat.)*
 liberty, *libertās, libertātis (f.)*
 lictor, *lictō, -ēre, lictōris (m.)*
 lie, *iaceō, -ēre, iacuī*
 lie (hid), *lateō, -ēre, latuī*
 lie (tell a), *mentior, mentīrī, mentītus (dep.)*
 life, *vīta, -ae (f.)*
 life-time (in), *vīvus, -a, -um, e.g., mē vīvō (in my life-time)*
 lift, *tollō, -ēre, sustulī, sublātus*
 light (n.), *lūx, lūcis (f.)*
 light, (adj.), *lēvis, lēve*
 light-armed, lightly equipped, *expeditus, -a, -um*
 lightning, *fulmen, fulminis (n.)*
 Ligurian, *Ligur, Liguris (m.)*
 like (adj.), *similis, -e*
 like (in manner of), *modō*
 like (v.), *amō (1)*
 like (the), *tālis, -e*
 likely to, use *fut. part.*
 liking, *amor, amoris (m.)*
 line (of writing), *versus, -ūs (m.)*
 line (battle), *aciēs, aciēī (f.)*
 lines (fortified), *mūnimenta, -ōrum (n. pl.)*
 linger, *moror (dep.) (1)*
 lion, *leō, leōnis (m.)*
 listen to, *audiō (4)*
 literature, *litterae, -ārum (f. pl.)*
 litter, *lectīca, -ae (f.)*
 little, *parvus, -a, -um*
 little worth, *parvī*
 little by little, *sēnsim; gradātīm*
 little (no), (adj.), *haud mediocris, -e*; (adv.) *vehementer, haud mediocriter*
 little, too, *parum*

- little way (a), paulum, aliquantum
 live, vīvō, -ēre, vīxī, vīctūrus ;
 (on) vīvō (*abl.*)
 live (inhabit), habitō (1), in
 with *abl.*
 Livy, Līvius, -iī (*m.*)
 load, onus, oneris (*n.*)
 loiter, moror (1) (*dep.*)
 London, Londinium, -iī (*n.*)
 long (*adj.*), longus, -a, -um
 long, before, mox, brevī
 long for, dēsiderō (1)
 (as) long as, quam diū
 long (time), diū
 longer (space), longius
 longer (time), diūtius
 (a) long time, now, iam
 dūdum
 look at, intueor (2) (*dep.*)
 look after, cūrō (1)
 look back (behind), respiciō,
 -ēre, respexī, respectus
 look for, quaerō, -ēre, quaesivī,
 quaesitus
 look to, caveō, -ēre, cāvī, cautum
 (*dat.*)
 look out, prōspiciō, -ēre,
 prōspexī, prospectus
 lose, amittō, -ēre, amisi, amissus;
 perdō, -ēre, perdidī, perditus
 lose heart, animum dēmittō,
 -ēre, -misi, -missus; animō
 dēficiō, -ēre, dēfeci, dēfectus
 loss, damnum, -ī (*n.*)
 lot, sors, sortis (*f.*)
 loud, clārus, -a, -um; māgnus,
 -a, -um
 love, amō (1)
 lovely, pulcher, pulchra, pul-
 chrum
 low (*adj.*), humilis, -e, *gen.*
 humilis
 lower (*v.*), dēmittō, -ēre, dēmisi,
 dēmissus
 loyal, fidus, -a, -um
 loyalty, fidēs, -ei (*f.*)
 lucky, fēlix, *gen.* fēlicis
 lurk, lateō (2)
 Luscinius, Luscinius, -iī (*m.*)
 mad (be), dēlirō (1); furō (3);
 insāniō (4)
 made (be), fiō, fierī, factus
 madman, insānus, -a, -um;
 mente captus, -a, -um
 magistrate, magistrātus, -ūs
 (*m.*)
 maid (servant), ancilla, -ae (*f.*)
 mainland, continēns, con-
 tinentis (*f.*)
 maintain, alō, -ēre, alui, altum
 make for, petō, -ēre, petivī,
 petitus
 make fun of, lūdificor (*dep.*) (1)
 make peace, pacem faciō (3)
 make public, patofaciō, -ēre,
 -feci, -factus
 make ready, parō (1); ōrnō (1)
 (of ships)
 make road, viam mūniō
 make speech, ōrātiōnem habeō
 (2)
 make use of, ūtor, ūti, ūsus (*abl.*)
 man, vir, virī (*m.*)
 Manlius, Mānlius, -iī (*m.*)
 manners, mōrēs, -um (*m. pl.*)
 many, multī, -ae, -a
 Marathon, Marathōn, Mara-
 thōnis (*m.*)
 march (*n.*), iter, itineris (*n.*)
 march (*v.*), iter faciō; contendō,
 -ēre, contendī
 Marcius, Marcius, iī (*m.*)
 mark of, use *genitive case*
 market-place, forum, -ī (*n.*)
 marry (of a man), dūcō (3) in
 matrimōnium
 marry (of a woman), nūbō, -ēre,
 nūpsi, nūptum (*dat.*)
 Marseilles, Massilia, -ae (*f.*)
 marsh, palūs, palūdis (*f.*)
 massacre (*v.*), trucidō (1)
 mast, mālus, -ī (*m.*)

- master** (of pupils), *magister*, *magistrī* (*m.*)
master (of servants), *dominus*, *-ī* (*m.*)
match for, *pār*, *gen. pārī* (*dat.*)
matter (*n.*), *rēs*, *reī* (*f.*)
matters (it), *interest*, *-esse*, *-fuit*; *rēfert*
may, (*mihi*) *licet*, *licēre*, *licuit* (*impers.*)
mean (*v.*); *volō*, *velle*, *voluī*; *significō* (1)
means of (by), *per*, with *acc.*
meanwhile, *interea*
measure, *mētor*, *mētīrī*, *mēnsus* (*dep.*)
medicine, *medicīna*, *-ae* (*f.*)
meet, *obviam eō*, *īre*, *īvī* (*īī*), *ītum* (*dat.*); *occurrō*, *-ēre*, *occurrī*, *occursum* (*dat.*); *conveniō*, *-ire*, *convēnī*, *conventum* (*acc.*)
meeting, *cōntiō*, *cōntiōnis* (*f.*); *cōncilium*, *-īī* (*n.*)
Megara, *Megara*, *-ae* (*f.*)
melodious, *canōrus*, *-a*, *-um*
melt (*trans.*), *solvō*, *-ēre*, *solvī*, *solūtus*
melt (*intrans.*), *solvor*, *solvī*, *solūtus*
memory (within human), *post hominum memoriam*
mention (*v.*), *commemorō* (1)
merchant, *mercātor*, *mercātoris* (*m.*)
mercy, *miserīcordia*, *-ae* (*f.*)
mere, *sōlus*, *-a*, *-um*
message, *nūntius*, *-īī* (*m.*)
Messana, *Messāna*, *-ae* (*f.*)
messenger, *nūntius*, *-īī* (*m.*)
method, *modus*, *-ī* (*m.*); *ratio*, *rationis* (*f.*); or use *quō modō* with *subord. clause*
mid-day, *merīdiēs*, *merīdiēī* (*m.*)
middle } *medius*, *-a*, *-um*
midst of }
migrate, *migrō* (1)
- mile**, *mīlle passūs*; **two miles**, *duo mīlia passuum*
Miletus, *Milētus*, *-ī* (*f.*)
milk, *lac*, *lactis* (*n.*)
mind, *animus*, *-ī* (*m.*); *mēns*, *mentis* (*f.*)
mind that, *cūrō* (1); with *neg.* *caveō*, *-ēre*, *cāvī*, *cautum*
mirror, *speculum*, *-ī* (*n.*)
misfortune, *rēs adversae* (*f. pl.*)
miss, *omittō*, *-ēre*, *omīsī*, *omissus*; (long for) *dēsiderō* (1)
mistake of, *make*, *committō* ut
mistakes (make), *peccō* (1)
mix, *misceō*, *-ēre*, *miscuī*, *mīxtus*
moment (of time), *pūctum temporis*
money, *pecūnia*, *-ae* (*f.*)
money (to make), *mercēdem* (*pecūniā*) *comparō* (1)
monster, *mōnstrum*, *-ī* (*n.*); *fera*, *-ae* (*f.*)
month, *mēnsis*, *mēnsis* (*m.*)
moon, *lūna*, *-ae* (*f.*)
more, *plūs*, *gen. plūris*
moreover, *praeterea*
morning (in the), *māne*
morning (this), *hodiē māne*
most, *plūrimī*, *-ae*, *-a*
mother, *māter*, *mātris* (*f.*)
motive, use *quā rē* with *subord. clause*
mount, *ascendō*, *-ēre*, *ascendī*, *ascēsum*
mounted on, *vectus*, with *abl.*
mountain, *mōns*, *montis* (*m.*)
mourn (for), *lūgeō*, *-ēre*, *lūxī*
mouth, *ōs*, *ōris* (*n.*)
move (*trans.*), *moveō*, *-ēre*, *mōvī*, *mōtus*
move (*intrans.*), *moveor*, *-ēri*, *mōtus*
move (propose), *cēnseō*, *-ēre*, *cēnsuī*, *cēnsus*; *sententiam ferō*, *ferre*, *tūlī*, *lātus*

- much, multum
 much as if, perinde ac
 murder (*n.*), caedēs, caedis (*f.*)
 murder (*v.*), occidō, -ēre, occidī,
 occīsus; trucidō (1)
 music, mūsica, -ae (*f.*)
 musical, canōrus, -a, -um
 my, meus, -a, -um, *voc. sing. (m.)*,
 mī

 Naevius, Naevius, -iī (*m.*)
 name, nōmen, nōminis (*n.*)
 named (by name), nōmine
 Nasica, Nāsica, -ae (*m.*)
 nation, gēns, gentis (*f.*); populus,
 -i (*m.*)
 native, barbarus, -i (*m.*)
 native land, patria, -ae (*f.*)
 natural, as was, ut
 naturally, nātūrā
 nature, nātūra, -ae (*f.*)
 nature of, use quālis, quāle
 near (*prep.*), prope, with *acc.*
 nearer, propior, propius, *gen.*
 propioris
 nearest, proximus, -a, -um
 nearly, very, use haud multum
 abesse quā
 necessary, necessariū, -a, -um
 necessary (it is), necesse est
 neck, cervīx, cervicis (*f.*) (*always*
 plural in Cicero)
 need (*v.*), egeō (2) (*abl.*); indigeō
 (2) (*abl.*); careō (2) (*abl.*);
 opus est (*see Sect. XLIII.*)
 neglect (*v.*), neglegō, -ēre,
 neglēxi, neglēctus
 neighbour, vicīnus, -i (*m.*)
 neighbouring, finitimus, -a,
 -um
 neither (*pronoun*), neuter,
 neutra, neutrum, *gen. neutrius*
 neither . . . nor, neque . . .
 neque; nec . . . nec
 Neptune, Neptūnus, -u (*m.*)
 Nero, Nerō, Nerōnis (*m.*)
 nest, nidus, -i (*m.*)

 neutral (to be), neutrius partis
 esse
 never, numquam
 nevertheless, nihilō minus
 new, nōvus, -a, -um
 news (*n.*), nūntius, -iī (*m.*)
 news (any)? ecquid novī?
 news (bring), nūntiō (1)
 next (*adj.*), proximus, -a, -um
 next (*prep.*), iūxta, with *acc.*
 next day, postrīdiē; posterō diē
 Niciās, Niciās, -ae (*m.*)
 night, nox, noctis (*f.*); at night,
 nocte, noctu
 nine, novem
 ninth, nōnus, -a, -um
 no (*adj.*), nūllus, -a, -um, *gen.*
 nūllius
 no one, nēmo, *gen. nūllius, abl.*
 nūllō
 noble, nōbilis, -e
 noise, strepitus, -ūs (*m.*)
 nominally, nōmine
 noon, merīdiēs, -eī (*m.*)
 nor, nec, neque; (*in final clauses.*
 nēve, neu)
 not, nōn
 not at all, nūllo modō; minimē
 not even, nē . . . quīdem
 not only . . . but also, nōn
 solum . . . sed etiam
 not only not . . . but not even,
 nōn modō (nōn) . . . sed nē
 . . . quīdem
 not yet, nōndum
 notable, īnsignis, -e
 nothing, nihil
 notice (*v.*), animadvertō, -ēre,
 -vertī, -versus
 notwithstanding (*adv.*), nihilō
 minus
 notwithstanding (*conj.*), quam-
 quam
 now (at present time), nunc
 now (already), iam
 nowhere, nusquam
 nuisance, incommodum, -i (*n.*)

- Numa, Numa, -ae (*m.*)
 number, numerus, -ī (*m.*)
 numbers, multitūdō, multitūdinis (*f.*), or use quot with subord. clause
 numerous, permultī, -ae, -a; plurimī, -ae, -a
 obey, pāreō (2) (*dat.*); obtemperō (1) (*dat.*)
 object (*n.*), rēs, reī (*f.*); cōsilium, -ī (*n.*); or use quā rē with subord. clause
 object (*v.*), nōlō, nōlle, nōlūi
 object (make one's), id agere ut
 object, without effecting one's, rē infectā
 observe (keep), cōservō (1)
 obtain, adipīscor, adipīscī, adeptus (*dep.*); nancīscor, nancīscī, nāctus (*dep.*)
 obvious, manifestus, -a, -um
 occupation, lābor, lābōris (*m.*)
 occupy, teneō, -ēre, tenuī, tentum
 of (about), dē, with *abl.*
 of (among), inter, with *acc.*; (from among), ex, with *abl.*
 off, longē, procul
 offer (*trans.*), pracheō (2)
 offer (*intrans.*), use volō, velle, volūi
 office, honōs, honōris (*m.*); magistrātus, -ūs (*m.*)
 officer (of high rank), lēgātus, -ī (*m.*)
 officer, tribūnus mīlitum; centuriō, centuriōnis (*m.*)
 often, saepe
 oil, oleum, -ī (*n.*)
 old (ancient), antīquus, -a, -um
 old (still existing), vetus, *gen.* veteris
 old age, senectūs, senectūtis (*f.*)
 old age (in his, etc.), use senex
 old man, senex, senis (*m.*), *gen.* pl. senum
 older, nātū māior (*of a person*)
 oldest, nātū māximus (*of a person*)
 olive, olea, -ae (*f.*)
 Olympus, Olympus, -ī (*m.*)
 omit, omittō, -ēre, omīsi, omissus
 on, in, with *abl.*
 once (as opp. to twice), semel
 once (upon a time), ōlim
 once (at), statim; confestim
 one, ūnus, -a, -um, *gen.* ūnūs
 one day, aliquandō
 one . . . other, alius . . . alius
 one . . . other (of two), alter . . . alter
 only, sōlus, -a, -um
 open (*v.*), aperīō, -īre, aperuī, apertus
 opinion, sententia, -ae (*f.*)
 opportunity, occāsiō, occasiōnis (*f.*); facultās, facultātis (*f.*)
 oppose, obstō, -āre, obstiti (*dat.*); resistō, -ēre, restiti (*dat.*); adversor (1) (*dep.*)
 opposition, without, nūllō repūgnante, nūllō obstante
 oppress, vexō (1)
 or, aut, vel
 or . . . not, an nōn, necnē
 oracle, ōrāculum, -ī (*n.*)
 orator, ōrātor, ōrātōris (*m.*)
 order (*n.*), iūssum, -ī (*n.*)
 order (*v.*), iubeō, -ēre, iūssī, iūssus; imperō (1) (*dat.*)
 origin, genus, generis (*m.*) or use unde with subord. clause
 ornament (*n.*), ōrnāmentum, -ī (*n.*)
 ornament (*v.*), ōrnō (1)
 other (than), alius (āc)
 other (of two), alter, altera, alterum, *gen.* alterius
 others, aliī, reliquī
 others (all), cēteri
 others, belonging to, alienus, -a, -um

- Otho, Othō, Othōnis (*m.*)
 ought, dēbeō (2)
 our, noster, nostra, nostrum
 our men, nostrī, -ōrum (*m. pl.*)
 out of, ē, ex, with *abl.*
 out of doors (*rest at*), forīs
 out of doors (*motion to*), forās
 outside, forīs
 outstanding, eximius, -a, -um ;
 ēgregius, -a, -um
 over (a river) (*prep.*), in, with
 abl.
 over with (to be all), āctum
 esse dē, with *abl.*
 overcome, superō (1)
 overtake, cōsequor, cōsequī,
 cōsecūtus (*dep.*)
 overthrow, superō (1)
 overwhelm, opprimō, -ēre,
 oppressī, oppressus
 owe, dēbeō (2)
 owing to, per, with *acc.*
 owner, possessor, possessōris (*m.*)
 ox, bōs, bovis (*c.*)
- Padaei, Padaei, -ōrum (*m. pl.*)
 pain, dolor, doloris (*m.*)
 painful, be, dolorī esse
 palace, rēgia, -ae (*f.*)
 panic, pāvor, pāvōris (*m.*)
 Pansa, Pānsa, -ae (*m.*)
 pardon (*n.*), venia, -ae (*f.*)
 pardon (*v.*), ignōscō, -ēre, ignōvī,
 ignōtus (*dat.*)
 parent, parēns, parentis (*c.*)
 parricide, parricidium, -iī (*n.*)
 part, pars, partis (*f.*)
 part in (take), intersum (*dat.*) ;
 versor (1)
 particularly, praesertim, prae-
 cipuē
 pass (*n.*), angustiae, -ārum
 (*f. pl.*) ; saltus, -ūs (*m.*)
 pass (a bill), perferō, -ferre,
 -tūlī, -lātus
 pass by, praetereō, -īre, -iī, -itum
 passer by, quī praeterit
- passes (hardly a day, etc.,
 but), diēs ferē nūllus est quīn
 pass the night, pernoctō (1)
 pass through, peragrō (1)
 passage (of time), longinquitās,
 -ātis (*f.*)
 path, sēmita, -ae (*f.*)
 patiently, aequō animō
 patriot, amāns patriae
 patron, patrōnus, -ī (*m.*)
 Paulus, Paulus, -ī (*m.*)
 pay, solvō, -ēre, solvī, solūtus
 pay attention, operam dō, dāre,
 dēdī, dātus (*dat.*) ; studeō (2)
 (*dat.*)
 pay back, reddō, -ēre, reddidī,
 redditus
 pay for, emō, -ēre, emī, emptus
 peace, pax, pacis (*f.*)
 peace (man of), imbellis
 peace (make), pacem incō, -īre,
 -iī, -itum, cum, with *abl.*
 peacock, pāvō, pāvōnis (*m.*)
 pear, pīrus, -ī (*m.*)
 peasant, rusticus, -ī (*m.*)
 pebble, calculus, -ī (*m.*)
 penalty, poena, -ae (*f.*)
 penalty (pay), poenās dāre
 penny, as, assis (*m.*)
 people, pōpulus, -ī (*m.*)
 people (common), plēbs, plēbis
 (*f.*)
 people (Roman), pōpulus
 Rōmānus
 perceive, sentiō, -īre, sēnsī,
 sēnsū
 perform, fungor, fungī, fūctus
 (*dep.*) (*abl.*)
 peril, perīculum, -ī (*n.*)
 period of three years, triennium,
 -iī (*n.*)
 perish, pereō (4)
 permission (get), licet (*impers.*)
 (*dat.*)
 permission (give), permit, sinō,
 -ēre, sivi, situs ; patior, patī,
 passus (*dep.*)

- Persia, Persia, -ae (*f.*)
 Persian, Persa, -ae (*m.*)
 person, homō, hominis (*c.*)
 person (*in*), *use ipse*
 persuade, persuādeō, -ēre, per-
 suāsī, persuāsum (*dat.*)
 pertain to, pertineō (2), (*ad*,
 with *acc.*)
 perturb, commoveō, -ēre, com-
 mōvī, commōtus
 Petronius, Petrōnius, -iī (*m.*)
 Phaethon, Phaethōn, Phae-
 thontis (*m.*)
 Philip, Philippus, -ī (*m.*)
 philosopher, sapiēns, sapientis
 (*m.*)
 philosophy, sapientia, -ae (*f.*)
 Philoxenus, Philoxenus, -ī
 (*m.*)
 Phocion, Phōciōn, Phōciōnis
 (*m.*)
 Phormio, Phormiō, Phormiōnis
 (*m.*)
 picked, ēlectus, -a, -um
 picture, tabula, -ae (*f.*)
 piety, pietās, pietātis (*f.*)
 pious, deōrum cultor, cultōris
 (*m.*)
 Piraeus, Piraeus, -ī (*m.*)
 pirate, pīrāta, -ae (*m.*)
 pitch (camp), castra pōnō, -ēre,
 posuī, positus
 pitch (such a . . . that), eō
 . . . ut
 pitched battle, iūstum pro-
 elium
 pity (*n.*), misericordia, -ae (*f.*)
 pity (*v.*), miscreor (2) (*gen.*);
 miseror (1); mē miseret (2)
 (*gen.*)
 place (*n.*), lōcus, -ī, (*m.*)
 place (*v.*), pōnō, -ēre, posuī,
 positus
 plague, pestilentia, -ae (*f.*);
 pestis, pestis (*f.*)
 plain (*n.*), campus, -ī (*m.*)
 plan (*n.*), cōnsilium, -iī (*n.*)
 plan (form a), cōnsilium ineō,
 -īre, -iī, -ītum
 plant (*lit.*), serō, -ēre, sēvī, satus
 plant (fix), lōcō (1); figō, -ēre,
 fīxī, fīxus
 Plato, Platō, Platōnis (*m.*)
 play (*n.*), fābula, -ae (*f.*)
 play (*v.*), lūdō, -ēre, lūsī, lūsus
 plead (*v.*), causam dīcō (3)
 please, placeō (2) (*dat.*)
 please (if you), sī vīs, sī libet
 pleases (it), (mihi) placet (*im-
 pers.*)
 pleasing, grātus, -a, -um
 pleasure, voluptās, voluptātis
 (*f.*); (it is a) placet (*impers.*)
 (*dat.*)
 plot (*n.*), cōniūrātiō, cōniūrā-
 tiōnis (*f.*)
 plot (*v.*), cōniūrō (1)
 plough (*v.*), arō (1)
 pluck (*v.*), carpō, -ēre, carpsī,
 carptus
 plunder (*n.*), praeda, -ae (*f.*)
 plunder (*v.*), spoliō (1)
 plunge (*trans.*), mergō, -ēre,
 mersī, mersus; (a dagger)
 infigō, -ēre, -fīxī, -fīxus
 plunge (*intrans.*), mergor (3)
 poem, carmen, carminis (*n.*)
 poet, poēta, -ae (*m.*)
 point of (be on), in eō esse (*im-
 pers.*) ut
 point (*v.*), mōnstrō (1); ostendō
 -ēre, ostendī
 poison (*n.*), venēnum, -ī (*n.*)
 poison (*v.*), venēnō interficiō,
 -ēre, -fēcī, -fectus
 police, custōdēs, custōdum (*m.*)
 politics, rēs pūblica, rei pūblicae
 (*f.*)
 Pompey, Pompēius, -ī (*m.*)
 pool, stāgnū, -ī (*n.*)
 poor, pauper, *gen.* pauperis
 poor (unhappy), miser, misera,
 miserum
 Popilius, Popilius, -iī (*m.*)

- poplar, pōpulus, -ī (*f.*)
 port, portus, -ūs (*m.*)
 portico, porticus, -ūs (*m.*)
 position, lōcus, -ī (*m.*)
 position, high, dīgnitās, dīgnitātis (*f.*)
 possess, possideō (2); habeō (2)
 possessed of, praeditus, -a, -um (*abl.*)
 possessions, bona, -ōrum (*n. pl.*)
 post (*n.*), lōcus, -ī (*m.*); statio, statiois (*f.*)
 post (*v.*), pōnō, -ēre, posuī, positus
 postpone, differō, -ferre, distūlī, dilātus
 Postumius, Postumius, -iī (*m.*)
 pour, fundō, -ēre, fūdī, fūsus
 pour into, infundō (3)
 pour out, effundō (3)
 poverty, paupertās, paupertātis (*f.*)
 power (ability), ingenium, -iī (*n.*)
 power, with all one's, prō virilī parte
 powerful, potēns, *gen.* potentis
 powerless (be), nihil posse
 praetor, praetor, praetōris (*m.*)
 praise (*n.*), laus, laudis (*f.*)
 praise (*v.*), laudō (1)
 pray, precor (1) (*dep.*)
 prayers, precēs, precum (*f. pl.*)
 precautions, take, prōvideō, -ēre, prōvidī, prōvisus; caveō, -ēre, cāvī, cautus
 precept, praeceptum, -ī (*n.*)
 precious, pretiōsus, -a, -um
 prefer, mālō, mālī, mālū; antepōnō, -ēre, -posuī, -positus, with *acc.* and *dat.*
 prepare, parō (1)
 presence of (in), cōram, with *abl.*
 present (*n.*), dōnum, -ī (*n.*)
 present (*v.*), dōnō (1)
 present (offer), praebeō (2)
 present (be), adsum, adesse, adfuī
 preserve, cōservō (1)
 pretend, simulō (1)
 pretty, pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum
 prevent, prōhibeō (2)
 previous day, on, prīdiē
 previously, prius
 priest, sacerdos, sacerdotis (*m.*)
 price (at a great), magnī
 prison, carcer, carceris (*m.*)
 prison (throw into), in vincula cōniciō, -ēre, cōniciī, cōniectus
 prisoner, captivus, -ī (*m.*)
 prize, praemium, -iī (*m.*)
 probable (it is), vērī simile est
 proceed, pergō, -ēre, perrēxī, perrēctus
 prodigal, prōdigus, -a, -um
 profess, profiteor, -crī, professus (*dep.*)
 profit (*n.*), quaestūs, -ūs (*m.*)
 profit (to be of), lucrō esse
 progress, make, prōficiō, -ēre, prōfēcī, prōfectus
 prohibit, prōhibeō (2)
 prolong, prōducō (3)
 promise (*n.*), prōmissum, -ī (*n.*); spēs, speī (*f.*)
 promise (*v.*), prōmittō, -ēre, prōmisi, prōmissus; polliceor (2) (*dep.*)
 promise, break, fidem fallō, -ēre, fefellī, falsus
 promoter, auctor, auctōris (*m.*)
 promptly, ē vestigiō
 proof, documentum, -ī (*n.*)
 property, rēs familiāris (*f.*); bona, -ōrum (*n. pl.*)
 prophet, vātēs, vatis (*m.*)
 proportion to (in) (*prep.*), prō, with *abl.*
 proportion to (in) (*conj.*), prō eō ac
 proposal, sententia, -ae (*f.*)

propose, in animō habēre;
cēseō (2)

propose (name), nōminō (1)

prospect (*n.*), spēs, speī (*f.*)

prospect of (with), hāc spē ut

prosper
prosperous } rem prosperē
(to be) } gerere

protect, dēfendō, -ēre, dēfendī,
dēfēnsus

protection, praesidium, -iī (*n.*)

protector, dēfēnsor, dēfēnsōris
(*m.*)

protest (affirm), affirmō (1)

protest against, reclāmō (1)
(*dat.*); recūsō (1)

proud, superbus, -a, -um

provide for, prōvideō, -ēre, -vidī,
-vīsus (*dat.*)

provide with, praebeō (2)

provided that, dum; dummodō,
with *subjunctive*

province, prōvincia, -ae (*f.*)

provisions, commeātus, -ūs (*m.*);
rēs frūmentāria (*f.*)

public, pūblicus, -a, -um

public, make, patefaciō, -ēre,
-fēcī, -factus

publicly, palam

pull, trahō, -ēre, trāxī, trāctus

punish, pūniō (4); poenā afficiō
(3)

puny man, homunculus, -ī (*m.*)

pupil, discipulus, -ī (*m.*)

puppy, catulus, -ī (*m.*)

purpose of (for the), causā,
with *gen.*

purposely, dēindustriā, cōsultō

pursue } sequor, sequī,
pursuit (go in) } secūtus (*dep.*)

push, pellō, -ēre, pepūlī, pulsus

put away, dēpōnō, -ēre, dēposuī,
dēpositus

put in, inserō, -ēre, -uī, -tus;
īniciō, -ēre, -īeci, -iectus

put off (clothes), exuō, -ēre,
exuī, exūtus

put off (postpone), differō, -ferre,
distūlī, dilātus

put on (clothes), induō, -ēre,
induī, indūtus

put out (extinguish), exstinguō,
-ēre, extīnxī, extinctus

put to death, interficiō (3);
occidō (3); necō (1)

quality of, quālis, -e, with
subord. clause

quarrel, iūrgium, -iī (*n.*)

queen, rēgīna, -ae (*f.*)

question (*v.*), interrogō (1)

quickly, celeriter

quickly (as . . . as possible),
quam celerrimē

quiet, tacitus, -a, -um; quiētus,
-a, -um

quiet (be), taceō (2)

quietly, silentiō; tacitus, -a,
-um; secūrus, -a, -um

quite, omnīnō, funditus

quite (a few), nōn nēmō,
nōn nūllī, aliquot

race, gēns, gentis (*f.*); genus,
generis (*n.*)

rain (*n.*), imber, imbris (*m.*)

raise, tollō, -ēre, sustūlī, sub-
lātus

raise (a storm), excitō (1)

rampart, vāllum, -ī (*n.*)

rank, ōrdō, ōrdinis (*m.*)

rashly, temerē

rashness, temeritās, temeritātis
(*f.*)

rate, at a cheaper, minōris

rather, potius

rather think, ī, haud sciō an

ravage, vastō (1)

reach (*v.*), perveniō, -īre, -vēnī,
ventum, ad, with *acc.*

read, legō, -ēre, lēgī, lectus

read aloud, recitō (1)

ready, parātus, -a, -um; praestō
(*indec.*)

- readily, libenter
 realise, intellegō, -ēre, intellexī, intellēctus
 reality (in), rē ; rē vērā
 reason, ratiō, ratiōnis (f.)
 reason (for this), quam ob rem
 reason against, give, recūsō (1)
 reason of, cur, quā rē, with *subord. clause*
 rebel (v.), dēficiō, -ēre, defēcī, dēfectus
 rebuild, reficiō, -ēre, refēcī, refectus
 recall, revōcō (1)
 recede, recēdō, -ēre, -cessī, -cessum ; abeō, -īre, -iī, -ītum
 receive, accipiō, -ēre, accēpī, acceptus
 receive (greet), excipiō, -ēre, excēpī, exceptus
 recite, recitō (1)
 recognise, āgnōscō, -ēre, āgnōvī, āgnītus
 recover (*intrans.*), mē recipiō (3)
 recruit, tīrō, tīrōnis (m.)
 reduce, subigō, -ēre, -ēgī, -āctus
 reduced (be . . . to straits), addūcor in discrimen
 reflect, cōgitō (1)
 refrain from, temperō (1) (*dat.*) ; moderor (1) (*dep.*) (*dat.*)
 refuge (take), (me) cōnfugiō, -ēre, cōnfūgī ad, with *acc.*
 refuse, nōlo, nōlle, nōlūi
 regain, recipiō, -ēre, recēpī, receptus ; recuperō (1)
 regard, dūcō (3) ; habeō (2) ; existimō (1)
 region, regiō, regiōnis (f.)
 regret, me paenitet (2) ; doleō (2)
 reign (in the), rēgnante, or rēge, with *abl. of person*
 reinforce, reficiō, -ēre, refēcī, refectus
 reinforcements, subsidia, -ōrum (n. pl.) ; nōvae cōpiae (f. pl.)
 rejoice, gaudeō, -ēre, gāvīsus (*sem. dep.*)
 relate, nārrō (1)
 release, liberō (1)
 reluctantly, invītus, -a, -um
 relying on, frētus, -a, -ums (*abl.*)
 remain, maneō, -ēre, mānsī (mānsūrus)
 remain behind, remaneō (2)
 remains, it, restat (ut)
 remark (n.), vōx, vōcis (f.)
 remark (v.), dīcō, -ēre, dīxī, dīctus
 remember, recordor (1) ; meminī, meminisse
 remembering, memor, *gen. memōris*
 remembrance, memoria, -ae (f.)
 remnants, use reliquus, -a, -um
 remnants, reliquiae, -ārum (f. pl.)
 remove (*trans.*), auferō, -ferre, abstūlī, ablātus
 renew, redintegrō (1) ; renōvō (1)
 render, faciō (3)
 renown, fāma, -ae (f.) ; glōria, -ae (f.) ; laus, laudis (f.)
 repair, reficiō, -ēre, refēcī, refectus
 repeal, abrogō (1)
 repeat, recitō (1)
 repeatedly, identidem ; saepe-numerō
 repent, (mē) paenitet, -ēre, -uit (*impers.*)
 reply (n.), respōnsum, -ī (n.)
 reply (v.), respondeō, -ēre, respondī, respōsus
 report (v.), nūntiō (1) ; referō, -ferre, -tūlī, -lātus
 reproach, vitiō vertō, -ēre, vertī, versus, with *dat. of person and acc. of thing*
 republic, rēs pūblica, rei pūblīcae (f.)

repulse, repellō, -ēre, reppūli, repulsus
 repulse, fāma, -ae (*f.*)
 request, gain, impetrō (1)
 request (make a), orō (1); rogō (1); petō (3)
 require (demand), postulō (1)
 require (need), egeō, -ēre, eguī (*abl.*); opus est (*abl.*)
 rescue, liberō (1); servō (1)
 rescue, come to, auxiliō venīre
 resent, doleō (2); aegrē ferō, ferre, tūlī, lātus
 resign, mē abdicō (1), with *abl.*
 resist, resistō, -ēre, restitī
 resistance, use preceding verb
 resolve, statuō, -ēre, statuī, statūtus; cōstituō (3)
 resolved (be), mihi placet (*impers.*) (2)
 resources, opēs, opum (*f. pl.*)
 resources (to use all) to, id agō ut . . . ; nihil praetermittō quā; summā ope nītor, nīti, nīsus (*dep.*)
 rest (the), reliquus, -a, -um; ceterī, -ae, -a
 rest (*v.*), requiēscō, -ēre, requiēvī, requiētum
 resting-place (*met.*), sepulchrum, -i (*n.*)
 restore, reddō, -ēre, reddidī, redditus; (*persons*) redūcō (3)
 restrain, cohibeō (2); retineō, -ēre, retinuī, retentus
 result (is), ēvenit (4) (*impers.*)
 retain, retineō, -ēre, -uī, retentus; cōservō (1)
 retinue, comitātus, -ūs (*m.*)
 retire, (1) mē recipiō, -ēre, recēpī, receptus
 retire (from an office, etc.), mē abdicō (1) (*abl.*)
 retreat (*v.*), mē recipiō, -ēre, recēpī, receptus
 retreat (sound the), receptuī canō, -ēre, cecini, cantum

return (*trans.*), reddō, -ēre, reddidī, redditus
 return (*intrans.*), redeō, -īre, rediī, reditum
 return thanks, gratiās agō, -ēre, ēgī, āctus
 reveal, patefaciō, -ēre, -fēcī, -factus; prōferō, -ferre, -tūlī, -lātus
 revenge (*n.*), ultiō, ultiōnis (*f.*)
 revenge (*v.*), ulcīscor, ulcīscī, ultus
 revolt (*v.*), dēficiō, -ēre, dēfēcī, dēfectus
 revolution, nōvae rēs, nōvārum rērum (*f. pl.*)
 reward, praemium, -iī (*n.*)
 Rhine, Rhēnus, -ī (*m.*)
 rich, dives, *gen.* dīvitis
 riches, dīvitiae, -ārum (*f. pl.*)
 rid, liberō (1)
 ride, equō vehor, vehī, vectus
 right, dexter, dextera, dexterum
 right hand (on), dextrā; ā dextrā
 rightly, iūre
 ring (*n.*), anulus, -ī (*m.*)
 ripe, mātūrus, -a, -um
 rise, surgō, -ēre, surrexī, surrectum
 risk, periculum, -ī (*n.*)
 rival, adversārius, -iī (*m.*)
 rival (at election), competitor, competitoris (*m.*)
 river, flūmen, flūminis (*n.*); fluvius, -iī (*m.*)
 road, via, -ae (*f.*)
 rob, fraudō (1); spoliō (1), ēripiō, -ēre, eripuī, ereptus
 robber, latrō, latrōnis (*m.*)
 rock, rūpēs, rūpis (*f.*)
 rod, virga, -ae (*f.*)
 Roman, Rōmānus, -a, -um
 Rome, Rōma, -ae (*f.*)
 Romulus, Rōmulus, -ī (*m.*)
 rough, sordidus, -a, -um
 round (*adj.*), rotundus, -a, -um

- round (*prep.*), circum, circa, with *acc.*
 round about, *use* finitimus, -a, -um
 rouse, excitō (1)
 rout, fugō (1)
 route, via, -ae (*f.*)
 royal, rēgius, -a, -um
 Rubicon, Rubicō, Rubicōnis (*m.*)
 Rufus, Rūfus, ī (*m.*)
 Rufinus, Rūfinus, -ī (*m.*)
 ruin (*n.*), exitium, -iī (*n.*); interitus, -ūs (*m.*)
 ruin (*v.*), vastō (1); dēleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus; in ruins, vastātus, -a, -um
 rule, regō (3)
 rumour, fāma, -ae (*f.*)
 run, currō, -ēre, cucurrī, cursum
 run away, terga dō, dāre, dēdī, dātus
 run short, dēficiō, -ēre, dēfēcī, dēfectus
 rush, ruō, -ēre, ruī, ruitum
 rush out, ērumpō, -ēre, ērūpī, ērūptus
 rush, there is a, concurritur (*impers.*)
 sack (*v.*), diripiō, -ēre, -ripiū, -reptus
 sacrifice, sacrificō (1)
 sad, trīstis, -e; maestus, -a, -um
 safe, tūtus, -a, -um; incolumis, -e
 safely, *use* tūtus, -a, -um; incolumis, -e
 safety, salūs, salūtis (*f.*); tūtum -ī (*n.*)
 sake of (for), causā (*gen.*); grātiā (*gen.*)
 sail, nāvigō (1)
 sail along, praetervehor, -vehī, -vectus
 sail round, circumvehor, -vehī, vectus
 sail (set), vēla dō (1); solvō, -ēre, solvī, solūtus (*navem*)
 sailor, nauta, -ae (*m.*)
 Salamis, Salamis, Salamīnis (*f.*); (*acc.*) Salamīna
 sally out, ēruptiōnem faciō (3)
 salt, sāl, salis (*m.*)
 same (the), idem, eadem, idem
 same as (the), idem ac (atque)
 same time (at), simul; eōdem tempore
 Sardis, Sardis, -ium (*f. pl.*), *acc.* Sardis
 satisfaction (to demand), rēs repetō, -ēre, repetī, repetītus
 satisfy, satisfaciō, -ēre, -fēcī, -factum (*dat.*)
 save, liberō (1); servō (1)
 saviour, liberātor, liberātōris (*m.*)
 say, dīcō, -ēre, dīxī, dīctus
 say . . . not, negō (1)
 scarcely, vix
 school, lūdus, -ī (*m.*); schola, -ae (*f.*)
 Scipio, Scīpiō, Scīpiōnis (*m.*)
 Scotsman, Calēdonius, -iī (*m.*), Scōtus, -ī (*m.*)
 Scottish, Calēdonius, -a, -um; Scōticus, -a, -um
 scout, explorātor, explorātōris (*m.*); speculātor, speculātōris (*m.*)
 scruple (*v.*), dubitō (1)
 sea, mare, maris (*n.*)
 sea fight, pūgna nāvālis
 seaside, ōra maritima (*f.*); lītus, litoris (*n.*)
 search, explorō (1); quaerō, -ēre, quaesīvī, quaesītus; petō, -ēre, petīvī, petītus
 seat, sēdēs, sēdis (*f.*)
 second time (for the), iterum
 secretly, clam
 see, videō, -ēre, vidī, vīsus
 see that to, cūrō (1); videō,
 seek for, quaerō (3); petō (3)

seem, videor, -ēri, vīsus (*dep.*)
 seemly, it is, decet (*impers.*)
 seemly fashion (in a more),
 moderātius
 seize, comprehendō, -ēre, com-
 prehendi, comprehēsus;
 (weapon), capiō, -ēre, cēpī,
 captus
 seldom, perrārō
 self-confidence, suī fidūcia, -ae
 (*f.*)
 sell, vëndō, -ēre, vëndidī,
 vënditus
 sell by auction, sub hastā
 vëndēre
 senate, senātus, -ūs (*m.*)
 senate house, cūria, -ae (*f.*)
 senator, senātor, senātōris (*m.*)
 send, mittō, -ēre, mīsī, missus
 send away, dīmittō, -ēre, -mīsī,
 -missus
 send back, remittō, -ēre, -mīsī,
 -missus
 send for, arcessō, -ēre, arcessivī,
 arcessītus
 send forward, praemittō, -ēre,
 -mīsī, -missus
 sentence (*v.*), condemnō (1);
 damnō (1)
 serious, gravis, -e
 serpent, anguis, anguis (*c.*)
 servant, servus, -ī (*m.*); *voc.*
 puer
 service (towards), meritum
 erga, with *acc.*
 service, be of, ūsuī esse (*dat.*)
 service, do a, bene mereor dē
 Servius, Servius, -iī, (*m.*)
 sesterce, sēstertius, -iī (*m.*)
 set fire to, incendō, -ēre, incendi,
 incēnsus
 set free, liberō (1); mittō, -ēre,
 mīsī, missus
 set out, proficiscor, proficiscī,
 profectus (*dep.*)
 set sail, solvō, -ēre, solvī,
 solūtus

set up, creō (1); faciō, -ēre,
 fēcī, factus; aedificō (1)
 seven, septem
 seventeenth, septimus decimus
 seventh, septimus, -a, -um
 seventy, septuāgintā
 several, complūrēs; aliquot
 - (*indecl.*)
 severe, gravis, -e
 severely, graviter
 Sextus, Sextus, -ī (*m.*)
 shade } umbra, -ae (*f.*)
 shadow }
 shake, quatiō, -ēre, quassus
 shallow (*n.*), vadum, -ī (*n.*);
 (*adj.*) vadōsus, -a, -um
 shameful, turpis, -e
 share (*n.*), pars, partis (*f.*)
 sharing, particeps, *gen.* par-
 ticipis (*gen.*)
 sharing, without, expers, *gen.*
 expertis (*gen.*)
 shed (tears), fundō, -ēre, fūdī,
 fūsus
 sheep, ovis, ovis (*f.*)
 sheer, praeruptus, -a, -um
 sheer folly, use stultissimus
 shepherd, pastor, pastōris (*m.*)
 shield, scūtum, -ī (*n.*)
 shine, fulgeō, -ēre, fulsī
 ship, nāvis, nāvis (*f.*)
 shoot, ēmittō, -ēre, ēmīsī,
 ēmissus
 shop, taberna, -ae (*f.*)
 shore, litus, litoris (*n.*); ōra,
 -ae (*f.*)
 short, brevis, -e
 shortly } brevī (tempore);
 short time } mox
 (in a)
 shoulder, humerus, -ī (*m.*)
 shout (*n.*), clāmōr, clāmōris
 (*m.*)
 shout (*v.*), clāmō (1)
 show, mōnstrō (1); dēmōnstrō
 (1)
 show oneself, (mē) praebeō (2)

- show (of a quality), praestō, -āre, praestitī
 shut, claudō, -ēre, clausī, clausus
 shut in, inclūdō, -ēre, inclūsī, inclūsus
 Sicilian, Siculus, -ī (*m.*)
 Sicily, Sicilia, -ae (*f.*)
 sick, ill, aeger, aegra, aegrum
 sick, be, aegrōtō (1)
 sickness, morbus, -ī (*m.*)
 side (*n.*), lātus, lāteris (*n.*)
 side (on every), undique
 siege, obsidiō, obsidiōnis (*f.*)
 sight (be in), in cōspectū esse
 sight (come into), in cōspectum venīre
 sign, signal, signum, -ī (*n.*)
 signify, significō (1); volō, velle, volūi, with *dat.*
 silence, silentium, -iī (*n.*)
 silent (be), taceō, -ēre, tacuī, tacitus
 silently, silentiō; tacitus, -a, -um
 silver (wrought), argentum, -ī (*n.*)
 similar, eius modi
 simply, solum; tantum
 sin (*n.*), peccātum, -ī (*n.*); scelus, sceleris (*n.*); nefās (*indec.*)
 sin (*v.*), peccō (1); scelus admittō (3)
 since (*conj.*), cum; quoniam
 sing, cantō (1); canō, -ēre, cecinī, cantum
 single, ūnus, -a, -um, *gen.* ūnius
 sink (*trans.*), mergō, -ēre, mersi, mersus
 sink (*intrans.*), mergor, -ī, mersus
 sister, soror, sorōris (*f.*)
 sit, sedeō, -ēre, sēdī, sessum
 sit down, considō, -ēre, -sēdī, sessum
 six, sex
 six hundred, sēscentī, -ae, -a
 sixteen, sēdecim
 sixth, sextus, -a, -um
 size, use quantus, -a, -um, with *subord. clause*
 skill, ars, artis (*f.*)
 skilled, perītus, -a, -um (*gen.*)
 skirmish, lēve certāmen, lēvis certāminis (*n.*)
 slack (*v.*), cessō (1)
 slain (the), caesi, -ōrum (*m. pl.*)
 slaughter, caedēs, caedis (*f.*)
 slave, servus, -ī (*m.*), *voc.* puer
 slavery, servitūs, servitūtis (*f.*)
 slavishly, servōrum modō; serviliter
 slay, necō (1); occidō, -ēre, occidi, occisus; interficiō, -ēre, -fēcī, -fectus
 sleep (*n.*) somnus, -ī (*m.*)
 sleep (*v.*), dormiō (4)
 slip, let (through hands), amittō, -ēre, -mīsī, missus
 small, parvus, -a, -um; exiguus, -a, -um
 small (very), smallest, minimus, -a, -um; perexiguus, -a, -um
 smoke, fumus, -ī (*m.*)
 snow, nix, nivis (*f.*)
 so (with *adj.* or *adv.*), tam
 so (*conj.*), itaque
 so (with *verb.*), adeō
 so (in such a way), adeō . . . ut
 so far from, see Sect. XLV.
 so big, great, tantus, -a, -um
 solely, solum
 so many, tot
 so much, tantum; (*of value*), tantī
 so much (at), tantī
 so often, totiēns
 soldier, miles, mīlitis (*m.*)
 Solon, Solōn, Solōnis (*m.*)
 solvent, be, solvendō esse
 some, nōn nullī, -ae, -a; aliquī, -ae, -a

some . . . others, *alii . . . alii*
 somebody (one) or other, *nesciō*
 quis
 somehow, *nesciō quō modō*
 some day, *aliquandō, olim*
 someone, *quīdam*
 someone of importance, *aliquis*
 sometimes, *interdum*
 son, *filius, -iī (m.)*; *voc. sing.*
fili
 song, *carmen, carminis (n.)*
 soon, *brevi (tempore)*; *mox*
 soon (as . . . as), *simul ac*
 (atque); *ubi, cum primum*
 sooner, *citius*
 sorrow, *dolor, doloris (m.)*
 sorry (be), *doleō, -ēre, -uī*; (for)
 paenitet (2) (*impers.*); *miseret*
 (2) (*impers.*)
 sound (n.), *sonitus, -ūs (m.)*
 sound (a retreat), *receptui canō,*
-ēre, cecini, cantum
 source (n.), *fons, fontis (m.)*
 source, *unde, with subord.*
clause
 sovereignty, *rēgnum, -ī (n.)*;
imperium, -iī (n.)
 Spain, *Hispania, -ae (f.)*
 Spaniard, *Hispanus, -ī (m.)*
 spare, *parcō, -ēre, peperci,*
parsum (dat.)
 sparing, *parcus, -a, -um*
 Sparta, *Sparta, -ae (f.)*
 Spartan, *Spartanus, -ī (m.)*
 speak, *loquor, loqui, locutus*
(dep.)
 speak to, *adloquor (3) (dep.)*
(acc.)
 spear, *hasta, -ae (f.)*
 spectacle, *spectaculum, -ī (n.)*
 spectator, *spectator, spectatoris*
(m.); *qui spectat*
 speech, *oratio, orationis (f.)*
 speech (make a), *orationem*
habeō (2), apud with acc.
 speed (n.), *celeritas, celeritatis*
(f.)

speed (with all), *quam celer-*
rimē; *summā cum celeritate*
 speedy, *celer, celeris, celere*
 spend money, *consūmō, -ēre,*
-sūpsī, -sūptus
 spend time, *tempus agō, -ēre,*
ēgī, āctus
 spend the night, *pernoctō (1)*
 spend the winter, *hiemō (1)*
 spirit, *animus, -ī (m.)*
 spoil (n.), *praeda, -ae (f.)*
 spoil (v.), *praedor (1) (dep.)*;
spoliō (1)
 spoil (indulge), *indulgeō, -ēre,*
indulsi (dat.)
 spot (place), *locus, -ī (m.)*
 spring (water), *fons, fontis (m.)*
 spring (season) (n.), *vēr, vēris*
(n.)
 spring from, *orior, oriri, ortus*
(dep.); *nāscor, nāsci, nātus*
(dep.)
 spy, *speculator, speculatoris (m.)*
 stab, *confodiō, -ēre, -fodi,*
-fossus
 stand, *stō, stāre, steti, stātum*
 stand by, *stāre ā, ab*; *adsum,*
-esse, -fui (dat.)
 stand for, *petō, -ēre, petivi,*
petitus
 stand in the way of, *obstō, -āre,*
obstiti (dat.)
 standard, *vexillum, -ī (n.)*;
signum, -ī (n.)
 standard-bearer, *vexillarius, -iī*
(m.); *signifer, -ī (m.)*
 star, *stella, -ae (f.)*
 start (set out), *proficiscor, pro-*
ficisci, profectus (dep.)
 start (from sleep), *expergiscor,*
expergisci, experrectus (dep.)
 starvation, *famēs, famis (f.)*
 state (n.), *civitas, civitatis (f.)*;
rēs publica (f.)
 station (v.), *instruō (3)*; *dispōno,*
-ēre, -posui, -positus
 statue, *statua, -ae (f.)*

- stature, corpus, corporis (*n.*)
 stay, maneo, -ere, mansi
 (mansurus)
 steal, furor (*dep.*) (1)
 stealing (given to), furax, *gen.*
 furacis
 steep, praeruptus, -a, -um
 stick, baculum, -i (*n.*)
 still (*conj.*), tamen; nihilō
 minus
 still (*adv.*), adhuc
 stone, lapis, lapidis (*m.*)
 stone (leave no . . . unturned),
 nihil praetermittō . . . quā,
 id agō ut
 stool, scabellum, -i (*n.*)
 stop, consistō, -ere, constiti
 stop (cease), desistō, -ere,
 destiti
 stop, make to, prohibeō (2)
 store, condō, -ere, condidī,
 conditus
 storm (*n.*), procella, -ae (*f.*);
 tempestas, tempestatis (*f.*)
 storm (*v.*), expugnō (1)
 story, fabula, -ae (*f.*)
 story (goes), fama est; ferunt
 straight (*adv.*), recta
 strait, fretum, -i (*n.*)
 straits, extrēmum (summum)
 discrimen
 strange, mirificus, -a, -um
 strangely, mirificō
 stranger, advena, -ae (*m.*);
 peregrinus, -i (*m.*)
 stranger to (*met.*), alienus, ā
 with *abl.*
 straw (care a), flocci faciō
 stream (down), secundō flūmine
 stream (up), adversō flūmine
 street, via, -ae (*f.*)
 strength, vires, -ium (*f. pl.*)
 strengthen, confirmō (1)
 strike, feriō, -ire, percussī,
 percussus
 strike camp, castra moveō, -ere,
 movi, motus
 strike with terror, perterreō (2)
 strip (put off clothes), exuō,
 -ere, exui, exutus
 strip (plunder), diripiō, -ere,
 diripui, direptus; spoliō (1)
 strive, nitōr. niti, nisus (*dep.*)
 strong, validus, -a, -um; so
 strong (of wind), tantus, -a,
 -um
 strongly fortified, munitissi-
 mus, -a, -um
 struggle (*v.*), luctor (1) (*dep.*)
 studied, compositus, -a, -um
 study (*v.*), studeō (2) (*dat.*)
 stumble, labor, labi, lapsus
 (*dep.*)
 stupid, stultus, -a, -um
 stupidity, stultitia, -ae (*f.*)
 subdue, subigō, -ere, -ēgi,
 -actus
 subject (*n.*), civis, civis (*m.*)
 subject to, obnoxius, -a, -um
 (*dat.*)
 subject (matter), res, rei (*f.*)
 succeed, rem bene gerō, -ere,
 gessi, gestus
 succeed in, efficiō, -ere, effeci,
 effectus (*ut*)
 succeed to throne, regnum ex-
 cipiō, -ere, excipi, exceptus
 success, ressecundae (prosperae)
 success, without, re infecta
 successful (be), rem bene (pro-
 sperē) gerō, -ere, gessi, gestus
 successfully, feliciter, bene,
 prosperē
 such, talis, -e; eius modi
 such . . . as, talis . . . qualis
 sudden, subitus; necopinatus,
 -a, -um; repentinus, -a, -um
 suddenly, subitō, necopinātō,
 de improvīsō, repente
 suffer, patior, pati, passus (*dep.*)
 suffer defeat, cladem (incom-
 modum) accipiō
 suffering (*n.*), dolor, doloris (*m.*)
 sufficient, satis

suggestion (at the), auctōre
 suitable, idōneus, -a, -um (*dat.*
or ad with acc.)
 Sulla, Sulla, -ae (*m.*)
 sum (for a large), māgnī;
 māgnō pretiō
 summer, aestās, aestātis (*f.*)
 summit, summus (*mōns*)
 summon, arcessō, -ēre, arcessivī,
 arcessītus
 sun, sōl, sōlis (*m.*)
 sunrise, sōlis ortus, -ūs (*m.*)
 sunset, sōlis occāsus, -ūs (*m.*)
 suppliant, supplex, supplicis
 (*m.*)
 supplies, commeātus, -ūs (*m.*)
 support (bear), ferō, ferre, tūlī,
 lātus
 supposing that, quamvis (*subj.*)
 supreme, summus, -a, -um;
 māximus, -a, -um
 sure (be), prō certō habeo (2)
 sure to be, cūrō (1)
 surely? nōne?
 surely . . . not? num?
 surpass, superō (1); vincō, -ēre,
 -vici, victus
 surprise (to his), attonitus, -a,
 -um
 surprise (to the general),
 omnibus attonitīs
 surprised (be), miror (1) (*dep.*)
 surrender (*trans.*), trādō, -ēre,
 trādidī, trāditus
 surrender (*intrans.*), (mē) trādō
 surround, circumdō, -āre, -dēdī,
 -dātus; cingō, -ēre, cīnxī,
 cīctus
 survive, supersum, -esse, -fui
 (*dat.*)
 surviving, superstes, *gen.*
 superstitis
 swallow (*v.*), dēvōrō (1)
 swan, cyncus, -ī (*m.*)
 swarm (*v.*), abundō (1) (*abl.*)
 swear, iūrō (1)
 sweat, sūdor, sūdōris (*m.*)

sweep (drive away), (ex) abigō,
 -ere, abēgī, abāctus
 sweet, dulcis, -e; iucundus, -a,
 -um
 sweetly, suāviter
 swim, nō (1); nātō (1)
 sword, gladius, -ī (*m.*)
 Syracusan, Syrācūsānus, -ī (*m.*)
 Syria, Syria, -ae (*f.*)
 table, mēsa, -ae (*f.*)
 tactics, rēs militāris; ars bellī
 Tagus, Tagus, -ī (*m.*)
 take, capiō, -ēre, cēpī, captus
 take (lead), dūcō (3)
 take (poison), (venēnum) hauriō,
 -īre, hausī, haustus
 take up (arms), sūmō, -ēre,
 sūmpsī, sūmptus
 take back, referō, -ferre, rettūlī,
 relātus
 take care to, cūrō (1) (*ut*)
 take care not to, caveō, -ēre,
 cāvī, cautus (*nē*)
 take one's own life, mortem
 sibi cōnsciscō, -ēre, cōnscivī,
 cōnscitum; (se) interficiō, -ēre,
 -fēcī, -fectus
 take to flight, terga dō, dare,
 dēdī, dātus
 take off (clothes), exuō, -ēre,
 exuī, exūtus
 take up, suscipiō, -ēre, -cēpī,
 -ceptus
 tale, fābula, -ae (*f.*)
 talent (money), talentum, -ī (*n.*)
 talents (ability), ingenium, -ī
 (*n.*)
 talk, loquor, loquī, locūtus (*dep.*)
 talkative, loquāx, *gen.*
 loquācis; cōpiōsus, -a, -um
 tall, altus, -a, -um; prōcērus,
 -a, -um
 Tarpeian rock, rūpēs Tarpēia
 Tarquin, Tarquinius, -ī (*m.*)
 task, opus, operis (*n.*)
 tax, vectigal, vectigālis (*n.*)

- teach, doceō, -ēre, docuī, doctus
 teacher, magister, magistrī (*m.*)
 tear (*n.*), lacrima, -ae (*f.*)
 tear up, dīscindō, -ēre, dīscīdī,
 dīscissus
 tedious, longus, -a, -um
 tell (1) say, (2) order, (1) dīcō ;
 (2) iubeō, imperō (*dat.*)
 tell a lie, mentior, mentīrī,
 mentītus (*dep.*)
 tell a story, nārrō (1)
 temper (*n.*), īra, -ae (*f.*)
 temple, templum, -ī (*n.*)
 ten, decem
 tent, tabernāculum, -ī (*n.*)
 tenth, decimus, -a, -um
 terms, condiciōēs, -um (*f. pl.*)
 terms, be on intimate, famili-
 āriter ūtī (*abl.*)
 terrible, māgnus, -a, -um
 terrify, terreō (2)
 territories, finēs, -ium (*m. pl.*)
 terror, terror, terrōris (*m.*)
 Teucer, Teucer, Teucrī (*m.*)
 Thales, Thalēs, Thalīs (*m.*)
 than, quam
 thanks (give), grātiās agō, -ēre,
 ēgī, āctus
 that, is, ea, id
 that, in order, ut ; quō (*before*
comparatives)
 that of yours, iste, ista, istud
 the . . . the (with *compara-*
tives), quō . . . eō
 theatre, theātrum, -ī (*n.*)
 theft, furtum, -ī (*n.*)
 their own, suus, -a, -um
 Themistocles, Themistoclēs, -is
 (*m.*)
 then, tum ; then only, tum
 dēmum
 there (in that place), ibi
 there (to that place), cō
 therefore, itaque ; igitur (*not*
at beginning)
 thereupon, thereafter, tum ;
 deinde ; quō factō
 thick, dēnsus, -a, -um
 thief, fūr, fūris (*m.*)
 thin, tenuis, -e ; macer, macra,
 macrum
 think, putō (1) ; exīstimō (1) ;
 arbitror (1) (*dep.*) ; reor, rēri,
 rātus (*dep.*) ; cōgitō (1)
 third, tertius, -a, -um
 thirst (*n.*), sitis, sitis (*f.*) ; *acc.*
 sitim, *abl.* sitī
 thirty, trīgintā
 this, hīc, haec, hōc
 this (by itself), haec (*n. pl.*)
 this (all), haec omnia (*n. pl.*)
 this morning, hodiē māne
 though, quamvis (*subj.*) ; quam-
 quam (*indic.*) ; cum (*subj.*)
 thought, cōgitātiō, cōgitātiōnis
 (*f.*)
 thousand, mille (*adj. indec.*) ;
 milia, -orum (*n. pl.*)
 threaten, minor (1) (*dep.*)
 threats, minae, -ārum (*f. pl.*)
 three, trēs, trēs, tria
 three hundred, trecentī, -ae, -a
 throne, rēgnum, -ī (*n.*) ; im-
 perium, -iī (*n.*)
 throng, turba, -ae (*f.*) ; multi-
 tūdō, -inis (*f.*)
 through } per, with *acc.*
 throughout }
 through (because of), per, with
acc. ; propter, ob, with *acc.*
 throw, iaciō, -ēre, iēcī, iactus
 throw at, petō, with *acc.* and
abl. ; cōniciō, -ēre, -iēcī,
 -iectus, in, with *acc.*
 throw away, abiciō, -ēre, -iēcī,
 -iectus
 throw in, īniciō, -ēre, -iēcī,
 -iectus
 tide, aestus, -ūs (*m.*)
 till (*conj.*), dum, dōnec, quoad
 till (*prep.*), usque ad, with
acc.
 time, tempus, temporis (*n.*)
 time in, ad tempus

- time in (spend), tempus terō,
-ēre, trīvī, trītus
timid, timidus, -a, -um
Timoleon, Tīmoleōn, Tīmole-
ontis (m.)
Timotheus, Tīmotheus, -a, -um
tired, fatīgātus, -a, -um; (dē)
fessus, -a, -um
tired (be), (mē) taedet, -ēre,
taeduit (*impers.*)
tiresome, molestus, -a, -um
to, ad, with *acc.*
to-day, hodiē
toga, toga, -ae (f.)
toil (n.), lābor, lābōris (m.)
toil (v.), lābōrō (1)
tomb, sepulchrum, -ī (m.)
to-morrow, crās
too, etiam; quōque
too . . . to, use *comparative*
with ut
too (much), nimis
tooth, dēns, dentis (m.)
top of, summus, -a, -um
torture, cruciātus, -ūs (m.)
touch, tangō, -ēre, tetigī, tāctus
towards, ad, versus, with *acc.*
tower, turris, turris (f.)
town, oppidum, -ī (n.)
townsman, oppidānus, -ī (m.)
track, (1) path, (2) footprint, (1)
sēmīta, -ae (f.); (2) vestīg-
ium, -īī (n.)
train, exerceō (2); doceō (2)
traitor, prōditor, prōditōris (m.)
transport, trāsmittō, -ēre,
-mīsi, -missus; trānsportō (1)
travel, iter faciō, -ēre, fēcī, factus
treachery { prōditiō, prōdi-
treason { tiōnis (f.); per-
fidia, -ae (f.)
treasures, ōpēs, -um (f. pl.);
divitiae, -ārum (f. pl.)
treasury, aerārium, -īī (n.)
treat, as friend, etc. (famili-
ārīter) ūtor, ūtī, ūsus (*dep.*)
(abl.)
treaty, foedus, foederis (n.)
tree, arbor, arboris (f.)
trench, fossa, -ae (f.)
trial (n.), quaestiō, -iōnis (f.);
causa, -ae (f.)
trial (bring to), in iūdicium
agō, -ēre, ēgī, āctus
trial (without a), (causā) rē
indictā; inaudītus, -a, -um
tribe, gēns, gentis (f.)
tribune, tribūnus, -ī (m.)
trick, dolus, -ī (m.)
troops, cōpiae, -ārum (f. pl.)
trouble (n.), negōtium, -īī
(n.)
trouble (v.), conturbō (1); soll-
icitō (1)
troublesome, molestus, -a,
-um
Troy, Trōia, -ae (f.)
truce, indutiae, -ārum (f. pl.)
true, vērus, -a, -um
trunk, truncus, ī (m.)
trust, cōfidō, -ēre, cōnfīsus
(semi. dep.) (dat.); crēdō,
-ēre, crēdidī, crēditum (dat.)
trustworthy { fidus, -a, -um;
trusted (to be) { fidēlis, -e
truth, vērītās, vērītātis (f.)
truth (to tell), vērā (vērūm),
dīco, ēre, dīxī, dīctus
try, cōnor (1) (*dep.*)
try (in court), iūdicō (1)
tub, dōlium, -īī (n.)
tunic, tunica, -ae (f.)
turn away (*trans.*), āvertō, -ēre,
āvertī, āversus
turn round (*trans.*), convertō,
-ēre, convertī, conversus
turning, conversus, -a, -um
twelfth, duodecimus, -a, -um
twenty, vīgintī
twice, bis
two, duo, duae, duo
two hundred, ducentī, -ae, -a
tyrant, tyrannus, -ī (m.);
dominus, -ī (m.)

unaccustomed, *insuētus*, -a, -um
 (*gen.*)
 unanimously, *ūnā vōce*; *ūnō cōnsēnsū*
 unarmed, *inermis*, -e; *nūdus*, -a, -um
 uncertain, *incertus*, -a, -um;
 or use verb, e.g. *nesciō*
 under, sub, with *abl.* (*rest at*);
 with *acc.* (*motion to*)
 under arms, *armātus*, -a, -um
 understand, *intelligō*, -ēre, *intellēxī*, *intellēctus*
 undertake, *suscipiō*, -ēre, *suscēpī*, *susceptus*
 undone, leave nothing, *nihil praetermittō*
 unequal to, *impār*, *gen. imparis*
 unfinished, *quīn*
 ungrateful, *ingrātus*, -a, -um
 unharmed, *tūtus*, -a, -um
 unimpaired, *integer*, *integra*, *integrum*; *salvus*, -a, -um
 unknown, *ignōtus*, -a, -um
 unlawful, *nefās* (*indec.*)
 unless, *nisi*
 unmindful, *immemor*, *gen. immemōris* (*gen.*)
 unmoved, *immōtus*, -a, -um
 unnecessarily, *nimis*
 unpolished, *impolītus*, -a, -um
 unprepared, *imparātus*, -a, -um
 unseemly, it is, *dēdecet* (2) (*impers.*)
 unskilled, *imperītus*, -a, -um (*gen.*)
 unsuccessful, *rē infectā*
 unsuccessful (be), male evenit (*impers.*); *rem male gerō*, -ēre, *gessi*, *gestus*
 until, *dum*; *dōnec*; *quoad*
 untimely, *immātūrus*, -a, -um
 untrue, *falsus*, -a, -um
 unturned (leave no stone), *nihil praetermittō*, -ēre, -misi, -missus . . . *quīn*

unusual, *īnsolītus*, -a, -um
 unwary, *incautus*, -a, -um;
imprūdēns, *gen. imprudentis*
 unwilling, *invītus*, -a, -um
 unwilling, be, *nōlō*, *nōlle*, *nōluī*
 unworthy, *indīgnus*, -a, -um (*abl.*)
 up stream, *adversō flūmine*
 up to, ad, with *acc.*
 uproar, *tumultus*, -ūs (*m.*)
 urge, *hortor* (1) (*dep.*)
 use, *ūtor*, *ūtī*, *ūsus* (*dep.*) (*abl.*)
 use, be of, *ūsui esse* (*dat.*)
 useful, *ūtilis*, -e
 useless, *inūtilis*, -e
 usually, *plērumque*; *ut fit*; *ut solet*
 Utica, *Utica*, -ae (*f.*)
 utmost, *extrēmus*, -a, -um;
ultimus, -a, -um; *summus*, -a, -um
 utmost (do one's), *omnia facere* (*ut*); *summīs opibus enīti* (*ut*); *id agere* (*ut*)
 utter (*v.*), *edō*, -ēre, *edidī*, *editus*
 utterly, *penitus*; *funditus*; *omnīnō*
 vain (in) } *frūstrā*
 vainly }
 valley, *vallis*, *vallis* (*f.*)
 valour, *virtūs*, *virtūtis* (*f.*)
 valuable, *pretiōsus*, -a, -um
 value (*v.*), *aestimō* (1)
 vanguard, *prīmum āgmen*, *prīmī āgminis* (*n.*)
 vast, *ingēns*, *gen. ingentis*; *permāgnus*, -a, -um
 Veii, *Veii*, *Veiorum* (*m. pl.*)
 venture, *audeō*, -ēre, *ausus* (*sem. dep.*)
 veteran (*adj.*), *veterānus*, -a, -um
 Veturia, *Veturia*, -ae, (*f.*)
 vex, (*mē*) *piget*, *pigere*, *piguit* (*impers.*)
 vice, *vitium*, -iī (*n.*)

victim, victima, -ae (*f.*)
 victor, victor, victoris (*m.*)
 victorious (be), vincō, -ēre, vīcī, victus
 victory, victōria, -ae (*f.*)
 victory (win a), victōriam reportō (1); hostēs vincō, -ēre, vīcī, victus
 view to (with a), eō cōnsiliō . . . ut
 village, vīcus, -ī (*m.*)
 violate, violō (1)
 violating the laws, without, salvīs lēgibus
 violence, violentia, -ae (*f.*)
 violently, per vim
 virtue, virtūs, virtūtis (*f.*)
 visit, vīsō, -ēre, vīsī, vīsum
 voice, vōx, vōcis (*f.*)
 voice (with one), ūnā vōce; ūnō cōnsēnsū
 Volsci, Volscī, -ōrum (*m. pl.*)
 vote (*n.*), suffragium, -iī (*n.*)
 vote (*lit.*), suffragium ferō, ferre, tūlī, lātus; cēnsēō, -ēre, cēnsuī, cēnsū
 vow (*n.*), vōtum, -ī (*n.*)

wage (war), (bellum) gerō, -ēre, gessī, gestus
 waggon, plaustrum, -ī (*n.*)
 wait, maneō, -ēre, mānsī (mānsūrus)
 wait for, expectō (1)
 walk, ambulō (1)
 wall, mūrus, -ī (*m.*)
 war, bellum, -ī (*n.*)
 war (be at), bellum gerō, -ēre, gessī, gestus
 war (declare), bellum indicō, -ēre, indicī, indictus
 war (make), bellum gerō, -ēre, gessī, gestus
 warship, nāvis longa (*f.*)
 warm, calidus, -a, -um
 warn, moneō (2)

warrior, miles, militis (*m.*); bellātor, bellātoris (*m.*)
 wary, cautus, -a, -um; prūdēns, gen. prudentis
 wash (*intrans.*), labor (1) (*dep.*); perfect part. lautus
 waste away, tībēscō, -ēre, tībui
 waste (lay), vastō (1)
 waste (time), terō, -ēre, trīvī, trītus
 watch, intueor (*dep.*) (2); spectō (1)
 water, aqua, -ae (*f.*)
 wave, flūctus, -ūs (*m.*); unda, -ae (*f.*)
 way, via, -ae (*f.*)
 way (method), ratiō, ratiōnis (*f.*); modus, -ī (*m.*)
 way (in such a), ita . . . ut
 way of (by) (*prep.*), per, with acc.
 way of, stand in, obstō, -āre, obstitī (*dat.*)
 way (make), iter faciō, -ēre, fēcī, factus
 we, nōs, nostrī, (*object. gen.*), nostrum (*partit. gen.*)
 weak, infirmus, -a, -um; cōnfectus, -a, -um
 weaken, minuō, -ēre, minuī, minūtus
 wealth, dīvitiae, -ārum (*f. pl.*)
 wealthy, dives, gen. divitis
 weapon, tēlum, -ī (*n.*)
 weary, (dē)fessus, -a, -um; fatigātus, -a, -um
 weary (be), (inē) taedet, taedēre, taeduit (*impers.*)
 weep, fleō, -ēre, flēvī, flētum
 weep for, lūgeō, -ēre, lūxī
 weight, pondus, -eris (*n.*)
 welcome (*v.*), salūtō (1); benignē excipiō, -ēre, excēpī, exceptus
 welcome (*adj.*), grātus, -a, -um
 well (be), valeō, -ēre, valuī
 well (*adv.*), bene

- well then, quīn ergō
 well known, omnibus nōtus, -a, -um
 well known, it is, inter omnēs cōstat
 whale, bālaena, -ae (f.)
 what? quid?
 what (=that which), id quod
 whatever, quidquid
 whatever (*concessive*), quamvis
 what kind? sort? quālis?
 what o'clock? what time? quōta hōra?
 when? quāndō?
 when, whenever, cum
 whence? unde?
 where? ubi?
 where? (whither?), quō?
 wherever, ubicumque
 wherefore, quam ob rem
 where from, unde
 wheresoever, ubicumque
 where in the world? ubi gentium?
 whether, num
 whether . . . or (*adverbial clause*), sive (seu) . . . sive (seu)
 whether . . . or (*noun clause*), utrum . . . an
 whether . . . or not (*noun cl.*), utrum . . . an nōn (*direct*), necnē (*indirect*)
 which, quī, quae, quod
 which (from), unde
 which (of a series), quōtus, -a, -um
 which (of two)? uter? utra? utrum? *gen.* utrius?
 while, dum
 white, albus, -a, -um
 whither? quō?
 who (*rel. pron.*), quī, quae, quod
 who? quis?
 whoever, quisquis
 whole (*adj.*), tōtus, -a, -um
 why? cur? quā rē?
 wide, lātus, -a, -um
 widow, vidua, -ae (f.)
 wife, uxor, uxōris (f.); coniūnx, coniugis (f.)
 wild beast, fera, -ae (f.)
 will (against one's), invitus, -a, -um
 willing (be), volō, velle, volui
 willingly, libenter
 win over, (re)cōnciliō (1); (*a place*), potior (*dep.*) (4) (*abl.*)
 win praise, laudem cōnciliō (1); comparō (1)
 win prize, praemium cōsequor (3)
 win victory, victōriam reportō; (1) hostēs vincō, -ēre, vici, victus
 wind, ventus, -ī (m.)
 window, fenestra, -ae (f.)
 wine, vīnum, -ī (n.)
 wine-jar, amphora, -ae (f.)
 winter, hiemps, hiemis (f.)
 winter (spend), hiemō (1)
 winter quarters, hiberna, -ōrum (n. pl.)
 wisdom, sapientia, -ae (f.)
 wise, sapiēns, *gen.* sapientis
 wisely, sapienter; prūdenter
 wish, volō, velle, volui; cupiō, -ēre, cupiī, cupitum
 with, cum, with *abl.*
 with (the Romans, us, etc.), apud, with *acc.*
 withdraw, (mē) recipiō, -ēre, recēpi, receptus
 within, inter, intrā, with *acc.*
 without (*conj.*), neque; quīn; (*abl. abs.*, see Section XXIV.)
 without (*prep.*), sine, with *abl.*
 wolf, lupus, -ī (m.)
 woman, mulier, mulieris (f.); fēmina, -ae (f.)
 wonder, mīror (1) (*dep.*)
 wonderful, mīrificus, -a, -um; mīrus, -a, -um

wont (to be), soleō, -ēre, solitus
(*sem. dep.*)

wood (forest), silva, -ae (*f.*)

wooden, ligneus, -a, -um

word, verbum, -ī (*n.*)

word (promise), fidēs, -eī (*f.*)

work (*n.*), lābor, lābōris (*m.*);
(piece of work, task), opus,
operis (*n.*)

work (*v.*), lābōrō (1)

world, orbis terrārum (orbis,
orbis (*m.*))

worn out, cōfectus, -a, -um

worship, colō, -ēre, coluī,
cultus

worth (be), (cōn)stō, stāre, stēti

worth little, parvī; vīli

worth nothing, nihili

worth while (be), operae
pretium esse; tantī esse

worthless, vīlis, -e; nihili;
flocci

worthy, dignus, -a, -um (*abl.*)

wound (*n.*), volnus, volneris (*n.*)

wound (*v.*), volnerō (1)

wounded, volnerātus, -a, -um;
saucius, -a, -um

wreath, corōna, -ae (*f.*)

wrestle, luctor (1) (*dep.*)

wretched, miser, misera,
miserum

write, scribō, -ēre, scripsi,
scriptus

writer, scriptor, scriptōris (*m.*)

wrong (be), errō (1); peccō (1)

wrongly, iniuriā

Xerxes, Xerxēs, -is (*m.*)

year, annus, -ī (*m.*)

yesterday, herī

yield, cēdō, -ēre, cessī, cessum

yoke, iugum, -ī (*n.*)

yolk, vitellus, -ī (*m.*)

young, adulēscēns, *gen.*
adulēscētis; adulēscētulus,
-a, -um; parvulus, -a, -um

young man, adulēscēns, adulēs-
cētis (*m.*)

youngest, nātū minimus, -a,
-um

your, tuus, -a, -um (*referring to*
one person), vester, vestra,
vestrum (*referring to more*
than one person)

youth, iuventūs, iuventūtis (*f.*)

youth (*a.*), adulēscēns, adulēs-
cētis (*m.*)

youth, pueritia, -ae (*f.*); (*in*),
use puer, puella, etc., *in*
apposition

Zama, Zama, -ae (*f.*)

zeal, studium, -iī (*n.*); industria,
-ae (*f.*)

INDEX

- Ablative Absolute, 58-60
- Ablative Case—
 - Adjectives followed by, 158
 - Verbs followed by, 119, 120
 - of Definite Price, 122
 - of Respect, Manner, Quality, 160
 - of Instrument, Cause and Measure of Difference, 162
- Abstract Nouns translated by Subordinate Clauses, 46
- Accusing Verbs, 118
- Adeō nōn, 130
- Adjectives followed by—
 - the Ablative, 158
 - the Dative, 154
 - the Genitive, 150
- Adjectives (Indefinite), 188
- Adjectives (Verbal), 90
- After (*conj.*), 170, 176
- Aliquis, 188
- Alius (Idioms), 192
- Alternative Conditions, 101
 - Conjunctions, 5
 - Questions, 43
 - Indirect Questions, 48
 - Statements, 102
- Although, 198
- Amplius, 162
- Ante quam, 176
- Anyone, anything, 188
- As to . . . (Consecutive), 72
- Attain, 139
- Avoid, to (purpose), 67

- Calendar, 241
- Cannot help, 134
- Causā, 90
- Causal Clauses, 146

- Cause to, 139
- Cavē, 13
- Caveō, 217
- Cēlō, 217
- Circumdō, 217
- Command, Direct, 11
 - Indirect, 14
- Comparative Clauses, 213
- Concessive Clauses, 198
- Condemn, 118
- Conditional Clauses, 98, 99
- Conjunctions, Connectives, 5, 6
- Consecutive Clauses, 70
- Cōstituō, 36
- Cōnsulō, 217
- Contrive, 139
- Correlatives, 185
- Cum (substitution for participle), 56
- Cum (when, since, after, although), 170
- Cūrā, 12

- Dates, 241
- Dative Case—
 - Adjectives followed by, 154
 - Verbs governing, 83
 - Verbs governing, used in Passive, 85
- Dative (*Pred.*), 156
- Delay (from), 137
- Deter (from), 137
- Dicō, 22
- Dīcor, 34
- Doleō, 146
- Dōnō, 217
- Doubt, 132
- Dubitō, 17, 132
- Dum, 173
- Duty (*gerundive*), 92

Effecting (Verbs of), 139
 Either . . . or, 102
 Emotional Verbs, 31, 146
 Extent that (to), 72
 Exuō, 217

Fac, 12
 Fearing Verbs, 81
 Ferunt, 33
 Fieri nōn posse, 130
 Final Clauses, 65
 Fore ut, 28
 Forget, 118
 Future Infinitive Passive, 27

Gaudeō, 31, 146
 Genitive Case—
 Adjectives followed by, 150
 Verbs followed by, 118
 Partitive, 152
 Gerund, 87
 Gerundive, 90, 92

Hinder (from), 137
 Hope, 27
 However (*adv.*), 199

If (conditional), 98
 (whether), 48
 Impersonal Verbs, 105
 Impersonal Phrases, 130
 In eō esse ut, 130
 Indefinite Adjectives, 188
 Clauses, 184
 Pronouns, 188
 Indicative replacing Subjunctive in Conditionals, 206
 Indirect Command, 14
 Question, 44
 Statement, 22
 Induō, 217
 Infinitive, as Complement, 17
 as Verbal Noun, 87

Inquit, 33
 Instead of, 130
 Interrogative Words, 40
 Particles, 42
 Iubeō, 15

Licet (*verb.*), 105
 (*conj.*), 198
 Limiting Sentences, 72

Man (to) . . . , 74
 Metuō, 217
 Minus, 162
 Miseret, 108; Misereor, 118
 Moneō, 36
 Must (*gerundive*), 92
 Must be that, 134

Nē (purpose), 67
 Nē . . . quīdem, 19
 Necesse, 139
 Necessity (*gerundive*), 92
 Negatives, 19
 Negō, 25
 Nesciō quis, 188
 No, no one, nothing, 188
 Nōnne? 42
 Nostrum, nostri, 152
 Num? 42
 Num (whether), 48

Obligation (*gerundive*), 92
 Omit, to, 137
 Oportet, 106
 Opus est, 120
 Ōrātiō Obliqua, 226
 Order of Clauses, 7
 Order of Words, 1

Paenitet, 108
 Participles, Present, 51
 Future, 52
 Perfect, 54

Partitive Genitive, 152

Perinde ac, 214

Persuadeō, 36

Piget, 108

Pity, 118

Plūs, 162

Point of (on), 130

Post quam, 176

Potential, 204

Predicative Dative, 156

Price, 122

Prius quam, 176

Prohibeō, 17, 137

Promise, 27

Pronouns (Indefinite), 188

Prose Hints, 8

Prōspiciō, 217

Purpose, 65

Quam (ut) quī, 76

Quamquam } 199

Quamvis }

Quasi, 214

Questions, Direct, 40

Indirect, 44

Double, 43

Quī (Causal, Concessive), 201

Quī (Consecutive, Characteristic), 74

Quia, 146

Quīdam, 190

Quīn (= quī nōn), 76

Quīn (Negative or Interrogative Expressions followed by), 134

Quippe quī, 201

Quis (Indefinite), 188

Quis? 40

Quisquam, 19, 188

Quisque, 190

Quō (purpose), with Comparatives, 67

Quō . . . eō, 186

Quō minus, 137

Quod (because), 146

Quōtus quisque, 191

Recordor } 118

Remember }

Scribō, 36

Sē, suus, 25, 223

Sequence of Tenses—

Final, 65

Consecutive, 70

Indirect Questions, 45

So (adv.), 70

So far from . . . , 130

Statement, Indirect, 22-36

Stō (Impersonal use), 138

Subordinate Clauses in Indirect

Statement, etc., 222

Substitution of cum for the participle, 56

Supine, 216

Taedet, 108

Tamquam sī, 214

Tantum abesse, 130

Tell, 36

Temperō, 217

Temporal Clauses, 170-173

Tenses, 9

Timeō, 81

To (in order that), 65

Uter? } 191

Uterque }

Utinam, 203

Vacō, 217

Value, 122

Verbs of Effecting, 139

expressing Emotion, 31, 146

of Fearing, 81

of Hindering, etc., 137

of Hoping and Promising, 27

of Knowing and Saying, 22-26

Verbs—

governing the Ablative Case, 120
 governing the Dative Case, 83
 governing the Genitive Case, 118
 taking the Infinitive as Complement, 17
 taking Different Constructions, 36
 taking Different Cases, 217
 Verbal Adjective, 90
 Verbal Noun, 87
 Vereor, 81

Vestrum, Vestrī, 152

Vetō, 15

Videor, 34

Whether . . . or (Alternative Condition), 101

Whether . . . or (Alternative Indirect Question), 48

Wishes, 203

“Without,” followed by English Verbal Noun, 143

“Would have,” 233

“Would have been,” 235

LATIN GRAMMAR

FOR SCHOOLS AND COLLEGES

By W. KING GILLIES, M.A., B.A. (Oxon.), LL.D.

Rector, Royal High School, Edinburgh

AND

FREDERICK P. SHEPHERD, M.A.

Rector, High School, Kelso

216 pp.

Fourth Edition.

Price 3s. net.

JUST PUBLISHED

JUNIOR LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION

By ERNEST I. DENOON, M.A.

Senior Classical Master, Daniel Stewart's College, Edinburgh

AND

WILLIAM A. BAXTER, M.A., B.A.

*Assistant Classical Master, Daniel Stewart's College, Edinburgh ;
formerly Scholar of Gonville and Caius College, Cambridge*

This book is designed to lead the beginner in Latin by easy stages to an understanding of the simple sentence (excluding uses of the Subjunctive Mood). A special feature is the abundance of exercises provided and the opportunities for methodical revision.

148 pp.

Price 2s. 6d. net.

JUST PUBLISHED

THE GREEK MYTHOLOGY FOR SCHOOLS

By ALEXANDER DUTHIE, M.A.

Classical Master, Inverness Royal Academy

The object of this little book is to provide in connected form enough information to cover all the ordinary allusions met with, so that by reading it through, the student may get a conspectus of the whole field; while by means of a copious Index, it may also fulfil the function of the Classical Dictionary.

Copiously Illustrated. 192 pp. Price 3s.

MATHEMATICAL AND PHYSICAL TABLES

Prepared by JOHN B. CLARK, M.A., LL.D., F.R.S.E.

Formerly Headmaster, George Heriot's School, Edinburgh

The Mathematical Tables, which give 4-place values, are: Logarithms, Antilogarithms; Natural Sines, Cosines, and Tangents; Logarithmic Sines, Cosines, and Tangents; Squares, Cubes, etc.

The Physical Tables comprise: Conversion Tables of Length, Area, Volume, etc.; Mathematical Constants, Gravitation, Properties of Solids, Liquids, and Gases, etc.

Sixteenth Edition. Clearly printed on strong manilla.

42 pp. 9d. net.

A COMMERCIAL GEOGRAPHY OF THE WORLD FOR SECONDARY AND CENTRAL SCHOOLS

By FREDERICK MORT, M.A., D.Sc., F.G.S.

Fully supplied with Maps and Diagrams

400 pp. Revised Edition (1932). Price 3s. 6d. net.

